12-3200

UNITED STATES COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE SECOND CIRCUIT

THE AUTHORS GUILD, INC., Associational Plaintiff, BETTY MILES, JOSEPH GOULDEN, and JIM BOUTON, individually and on behalf of all others similarly situated, *Plaintiffs-Appellees*,

ν.

GOOGLE INC.,

Defendant-Appellant.

On Appeal from an Order Granting Certification of a Class Action, Entered on May 31, 2012, by the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York, No. 1:05-cv-08136-DC Before the Honorable Denny Chin

JOINT APPENDIX—Volume III of IV (A508-781)

MICHAEL J. BONI
JOSHUA D. SNYDER
BONI & ZACK LLC
15 St. Asaphs Road
Bala Cynwyd, PA 19004
(610) 822-0200
Counsel for Plaintiffs-Appellees
The Authors Guild, Inc. et al.

SETH P. WAXMAN
LOUIS R. COHEN
RANDOLPH D. MOSS
DANIEL P. KEARNEY, JR.
ARI HOLTZBLATT
WILMER CUTLER PICKERING
HALE AND DORR LLP
1875 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW
Washington, DC 20006
(202) 663-6000
Counsel for Defendant-Appellant
Google Inc.

ADDITIONAL COUNSEL LISTED ON INSIDE COVER

November 9, 2012

ROBERT J. LAROCCA KOHN SWIFT & GRAF, P.C. One South Broad Street Suite 2100 Philadelphia, PA 19107 (215) 238-1700

SANFORD P. DUMAIN MILBERG LLP One Pennsylvania Plaza New York, NY 10119 (212) 594-5300

Counsel for Plaintiffs-Appellees The Authors Guild, Inc. et al. DARALYN J. DURIE
JOSEPH C. GRATZ
DURIE TANGRI LLP
217 Leidesdorff Street
San Francisco, CA 94111
(415) 362-6666
Counsel for Defendant-Appellant
Google Inc.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
Volume I	
Docket entries, No. 1:05-cv-08136-DC (SDNY)	A1
Letter From Pamela Samuelson to Honorable Denny Chin re Academic Author Objections to the Google Book Search Settlement, Jan. 27. 2010, Dkt. No. 893	A95
Fourth Amended Class Complaint, Oct. 14, 2011, Dkt. No. 985	A119
Declaration of Joanne Zack in Support of Plaintiffs' Motion for Class Certification, Dec. 12, 2011, Dkt. No. 991	A135
Exhibit 10, Google Books Snippet View Page for <i>Ball Four</i> by Jim Bouton	A139
Exhibit 11, Google Books Snippet View Page for <i>Ball Four</i> by Jim Bouton	A205
Exhibit 12, Google Books Snippet View Page for <i>Ball Four</i> by Jim Bouton	A211
Exhibit 15, Application for Registration of a Claim to Copyright, Ball Four by Jim Bouton	A217
Exhibit 16, U.S. Copyright Office Certificate of Registration No. A173097, <i>Ball Four</i> by Jim Bouton	A220
Exhibit 17, Application for Registration of a Claim to Copyright, The Superlawyers by Joseph C. Goulden	A224
Volume II	
Declaration of Hal Poret in Support of Google Inc.'s Opposition to Plaintiffs' Motion for Class Certification, Feb. 8, 2012, Dkt. No. 1001	A226
Exhibit 1, Expert Report of Hal Poret, Survey of Published Authors Regarding Google Books, Jan. 2012	A228
Appendix A, Curriculum Vitae	A262

Appendix B, Instructions/Questionnaires	69
Appendix C, Materials Reviewed/Fees Charged	77
Appendix D, Data File	79
Appendix E, Cross-Tab Analysis of DataA3	05
Appendix F, Verbatim Responses	16
Declaration of E. Gabriel Perle in Support of Google Inc.'s Opposition to Plaintiffs' Motion for Class Certification, Feb. 8, 2012, Dkt. No. 1002	45
Declaration of Joseph C. Gratz in Support of Google Inc.'s Opposition to Plaintiffs' Motion for Class Certification, Feb. 8, 2012, Dkt. No. 1003	55
Exhibit 1, Google Books Snippet View Page for <i>Ball Four</i> by Jim Bouton	60
Exhibit 2, Excerpts of Deposition of Jim Bouton, Dec. 15, 2011A3	62
Exhibit 3, Excerpts of Deposition of Joseph Goulden, Jan. 6, 2011A3	78
Exhibit 5, Excerpts of Deposition of Betty Miles, Jan. 4, 2012A3	92
Exhibit 7, Publishing Agreements Produced by Plaintiff Jim Bouton	08
Exhibit 10A, Various Publication Agreements Produced by Plaintiff The Authors Guild (excerpts)	34
Exhibit 10B, Various Publication Agreements Produced by Plaintiff The Authors Guild (excerpts)	55
Exhibit 11, Google Books Snippet View Pages for Various BooksA4	89
Exhibit 12, Google Books Snippet View Page for <i>Standard Mathematical Tables</i> by Samuel M. Selby	93
Exhibit 14, Books and Pamphlets, Current and Renewal Registrations, January-June 1996, Catalog of Copyright Entries, <i>Third Series</i> , Vol. 20, Part I, No. I, Section I, Library of Congress, 1968 (excerpt)	95

Exhibit 15, Copyright Registrations Produced by Plaintiff Betty Miles	A500
Declaration of Daniel Clancy in Support of Google Inc.'s Opposition to Plaintiffs' Motion for Class Certification, Feb. 8, 2012, Dkt. No. 1004	A504
<u>Volume III</u>	
Zack Reply Declaration in Support of Plaintiffs' Motion for Class Certification, Apr. 3, 2012, Dkt. No. 1009 (public version)	A508
Exhibit 1, Defendants' Responses and Objections to Plaintiffs' First Set of Requests for Admission, Dec. 22, 2011	A511
Exhibit 2, Expert Report of Ben Edelman, Apr. 2, 2012	A536
Exhibit 3, Report of Professor Daniel Gervais, Apr. 2, 2012	A560
Exhibit 4, Deposition of Jim Bouton, Dec. 15, 2011 (excerpts)	A594
Exhibit 5, Deposition of Joseph Goulden, Jan. 6, 2012 (excerpts)	A609
Exhibit 6, Deposition of Betty Miles, Jan. 4, 2012 (excerpts)	A633
Exhibit 7, Deposition of Daniel Clancy, Feb. 10, 2012 (redacted version) (excerpts)	A647
Exhibit 8, Deposition of Kurt Groetsch (excerpts), Feb. 13, 2012	A680
Exhibit 9, Deposition of Stephane Jaskiewicz (excerpts), Feb. 14, 2012	A690
Exhibit 10, Deposition of Thomas Turvey (excerpts), Feb. 17, 2012 (redacted version)	A695
Exhibit 11, Deposition of E. Gabriel Perle (excerpts), Mar. 19, 2012	A703
Exhibit 12, Deposition of Hal Poret (excerpts), Mar. 22, 2012	A720

Volume IV

Exhibit 13, "Reference Guide on Survey Research," from	
Reference Manual on Scientific Evidence, Federal Judicial Center (2d ed. 2000)	A782
Exhibit 14, Information Produced by Defendant Google Related to Poret Deposition, Mar. 26, 2012	A832
Exhibit 15, Defendant's Supplemental Narrative Responses and Objections to Plaintiffs' Second Request for Production of Documents and Things, Dec. 9, 2011 (public redacted version)	A836
Exhibit 18, U.S. Copyright Office Public Catalog Entry, <i>E-commerce strategies</i> , Charles H. Trepper	A854
Deposition of Paul Aiken, Apr. 19, 2012 (excerpts)	A856
Defendant Google Inc.'s Responses and Objections to Plaintiffs' First Set of Interrogatories, Apr. 27, 2012	A865
Class Certification Hearing Transcript, May 3, 2012	A885
Order Granting Motion for Leave to Appeal, Aug. 14, 2012, Dkt. No. 1 (2d Cir.)	A929

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK

The Authors Guild, Inc., Associational Plaintiff,
Betty Miles, Joseph Goulden, and Jim Bouton,
individually and on behalf of all others similarly
situated,

Case No. 05 CV 8136-DC

Plaintiffs,

V.

FILED ELECTRONICALLY

Google Inc.,

Defendant.

REPLY DECLARATION OF JOANNE ZACK IN SUPPORT OF PLAINTIFFS' MOTION FOR CLASS CERTIFICATION

- I, Joanne Zack, declare pursuant to 28 U.S.C. § 1746 as follows:
- 1. I am a partner in Boni & Zack LLC, counsel for plaintiffs in this litigation, and a member of the bar of this Court. I submit this reply declaration in support of Plaintiffs' Motion for Class Certification.
- Attached hereto as Exhibit 1 is a true and correct copy of Defendant
 Google Inc.'s Responses and Objection to Plaintiffs' First Set of Requests for Admission.
- 3. Attached hereto as Exhibit 2 is a true and correct copy of the Expert Report of Benjamin Edelman.
- 4. Attached hereto as Exhibit 3 is a true and correct copy of the Expert Report of Daniel Gervais.

- 5. Attached hereto as Exhibit 4 are true and correct copies of pages from the transcript of the deposition of Jim Bouton in this case.
- 6. Attached hereto as Exhibit 5 are true and correct copies of pages from the transcript of the deposition of Joseph Goulden in this case.
- 7. Attached hereto as Exhibit 6 are true and correct copies of pages from the transcript of the deposition of Betty Miles in this case.
- 8. Attached hereto as Exhibit 7 are true and correct copies of pages 6-7, 30-45, 90-92, 108-09, 114-18, 162-63 from the transcript of the deposition of Daniel Clancy in this case. Google has consented to the public filing of these pages (as redacted). Pages 96-99, 140-41, and 182-87 from this deposition will be filed under seal.
- 9. Attached hereto as Exhibit 8 are true and correct copies of pages 4, 27-31 and 104-05 from the transcript of the deposition of Kurt Groetsch in this case. Google has consented to the public filing of these pages (as redacted).
- 10. Attached hereto as Exhibit 9 are true and correct copies of pages 5, 16-17 from the transcript of the deposition of Stephane Jaskiewicz in this case. Google has consented to the public filing of these pages (as redacted).
- 11. Attached hereto as Exhibit 10 are true and correct copies of pages 3, 62-64, and 96 from the transcript of the deposition of Thomas Turvey in this case. Google has consented to the public filing of these pages (as redacted). Pages 57-61, 81-85, 88-92 and 102-05 from this deposition will be filed under seal.
- 12. Attached hereto as Exhibit 11 are true and correct copies of pages from the transcript of the deposition of E. Gabriel Perle in this case.
 - 13. Attached hereto as Exhibit 12 are true and correct copies of pages from the

transcript of the deposition of Hal Poret in this case.

- 14. Attached hereto as Exhibit 13 is a true and correct copy of the Reference Manual on Scientific Evidence, *Second Edition*, Federal Judicial Center 2000, marked as Plaintiffs' Exhibit 76 at Mr. Poret's deposition.
- 15. Attached hereto as Exhibit 14 is a true and correct copy of information produced by defendant to plaintiffs after Mr. Poret's deposition.
- 16. Attached hereto as Exhibit 15 is a true and correct copy of the Public Redacted Version of Defendant Google Inc.'s Supplemental Responses and Objections to Plaintiffs' Second Request for Production of Documents and Things.
- 17. Attached hereto as Exhibits 16 and 17 are, respectively, the Complaint and Answer filed in the case *Authors Guild, et al. v. Hathitrust*, et al., 11 Civ. 6351 (HB), S.D.N.Y.
- 18. Attached hereto as Exhibit 18 is a true and correct copy of copyright registration information obtained online from the U.S. Copyright Office's Public Copyright Catalog (1978 to present) at http://www.copyright.gov/records/.

I declare under penalty of perjury of the laws of the United States that the foregoing is true and correct, and that this declaration was executed on April 3, 2012 in Bala Cynwyd, Pennsylvania.

/s/Joanne Zack
Joanne Zack

EXHIBIT 1

DURIE TANGRI LLP
DARALYN J. DURIE (*Pro Hac Vice*)
ddurie@durietangri.com
JOSEPH C. GRATZ (*Pro Hac Vice*)
jgratz@durietangri.com
217 Leidesdorff Street
San Francisco, CA 94111
Telephone: 415-362-6666
Facsimile: 415-236-6300

Attorneys for Defendant Google Inc.

IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT

FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK

The Authors Guild, Inc. et al.,	
Plaintiffs,	Civil Action No. 05 CV 8136 (DC)
v. Google Inc.,	
Defendant.	

DEFENDANT GOOGLE INC.'S RESPONSES AND OBJECTIONS TO PLAINTIFFS' FIRST SET OF REQUESTS FOR ADMISSION

Pursuant to Rules 26 and 36 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, Defendant Google Inc. ("Google") hereby responds to Plaintiffs' First Set of Requests for Admission (Nos. 1-34) with the following objections and responses.

GENERAL OBJECTIONS

- 1. Google objects to the preface, instructions, and definitions to the Requests to the extent that they purport to impose obligations that exceed those imposed by the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, relevant local rules, and applicable case law. In responding to these requests, Google has followed the applicable law and has ignored the improper preface, instructions, and definitions.
- 2. Google objects to the Requests in their entirety and to each request to the extent that the documents and information sought are protected from discovery by the attorney-client privilege, the work-product doctrine, or any other applicable privilege.
- 3. Google objects to each and every request to the extent that it seeks information that is confidential and/or proprietary information. To the extent not otherwise subject to objection, Google will produce such confidential documents in accordance with the terms of the protective order entered in this case.
- 4. Google objects to the Requests in their entirety and to each discovery request as unduly burdensome to the extent they seek information or documents already known to Plaintiffs, or which are equally available to Plaintiffs.
- 5. Google objects to the Requests in their entirety and to each discovery request to the extent they seek documents not relevant to any claim or defense in this action or reasonably calculated to lead to the discovery of admissible evidence.

- 6. Google objects to The Authors Guild's definition of "Google" as vague, ambiguous, unintelligible, and overly-broad. For purposes of responding to these discovery requests, Google will interpret "Google" to mean Google Inc. and/or its agents.
- 7. Google objects to the time period of these requests as overly broad and unduly burdensome.
- 8. Google objects to the Requests to the extent they request information pertaining to persons or activities outside the United States.
- 9. Google objects to the Requests to the extent they request information pertaining to Google products other than Google Books, and Google's responses are limited to Google Books.
- 10. Google objects to each and every discovery request to the extent that it purports to impose a burden of providing information not in Google's possession, custody, or control or which cannot be found in the course of a reasonable search. Google has undertaken a reasonable and good-faith effort to locate all relevant, non-privileged documents known to it at this time that are responsive to these requests, but they reserve the right to conduct further investigation and discovery as to any issue raised or suggested by any discovery request and to rely on any subsequently discovered information or documents at trial or any other proceeding.
- 11. Google has not yet completed its investigation of the facts relating to this case. Any and all responses to the following discovery requests are therefore based solely on information presently known to Google, and Google reserves its right to conduct further discovery and investigation and to use at trial or any other proceeding evidence of any subsequently discovered facts, documents, or information.
- 12. In responding to these discovery requests, Google does not concede the relevancy or materiality of any request or of the subject to which any request refers. Google's responses to

these discovery requests are made expressly subject to and without waiving any objections in any proceeding, including trial of this action, as to competency, relevancy, materiality, or privilege of any of the documents referred to or the responses given.

RESPONSES AND OBJECTIONS TO REQUESTS FOR ADMISSION REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 1:

As part of its Library Project, Google began in 2004 to digitally copy printed in-copyright works in their entirety, without permission from the copyright owners of such works.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 1:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits that it began in 2004 to scan, among other works, printed in-copyright and out-of-copyright works from libraries in their entirety, and that Google scans some works without the permission of the copyright owners in those works, as Google's acts with respect to those works constitute fair use. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 2:

One of Google's goals in its Library Project has been to digitally copy all of the printed books in the United States, including in-copyright books, regardless of their content.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 2:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of

the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 3:

Google undertook the Library Project for commercial reasons.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 3:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 4:

Google undertook the Library Project to gain a competitive advantage over other participants in the search engine market.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 4:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 5:

Google has entered into agreements with libraries, including the University of Michigan, Stanford University, and the University of California, to obtain access to works for the purpose of digitally copying such works, including in-copyright works.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 5:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits that it has entered into agreements with certain libraries, including the University of Michigan, Stanford University, and the University of California, pursuant to which those libraries request that Google scan books, including in-copyright works, provided to Google by the library. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 6:

In order to gain access to printed works for the purpose of digitally copying them, Google agreed to provide libraries with digital copies of works copied from the libraries' collections.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 6:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits that it has entered into agreements with certain libraries, including the University of Michigan, Stanford University, and the University of California, pursuant to which those libraries request that Google scan books, including in-copyright works, provided to Google by

the library, and Google provides digital copies of those books to the libraries which, pursuant to the contracts, may be used only in ways which do not violate copyright law. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 7:

To date, as part of its Library Project, Google has copied millions of in-copyright works, without permission from the copyright owners of such works.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 7:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits that it has scanned millions of in-copyright works from library collections and that, because Google's acts constituted fair use, permission was generally not sought or granted with respect to some of those works. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 8:

To date, as part of its Library Project, Google has provided to libraries digital copies of millions of in-copyright works, without permission from the copyright owners of such works.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 8:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101. Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits that it has entered into agreements with certain libraries, pursuant to which those libraries have requested that Google scan books, including in-copyright works, provided to Google by the library, and Google has provided digital copies of millions of those books to the libraries which, pursuant to the contracts, may be used only in ways which do not violate copyright law. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 9:

To date, as part of its Library Project, Google has copied in their entirety millions of incopyright works, including in-print and out-of-print works, fiction and non-fiction works, reference works, anthologies, educational works, textbooks, dissertations, monographs, journals, government publications and other type of works.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 9:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits that it has scanned in their entirety millions of books from libraries, including in-print and out-of-print works, fiction and non-fiction works, reference works, anthologies, educational works, textbooks, dissertations, monographs, journals, government publications and other types of works. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 10:

Each in-copyright work copied by Google as part of its Library Project was copied by Google in its entirety at least twice, without permission from the copyright owners of such works.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 10:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits that it creates and maintains, as necessary for its fair uses, more than one copy of the books it scans from library collections. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 11:

Google maintains on its servers digital copies of millions of in-copyright works, without permission from the copyright owners of such works.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 11:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101. Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous. Google objects to the term "works" as vague and ambiguous. Google objects to this Request to

the extent it requests information pertaining to Google products other than Google Books, and Google's response is limited to Google Books.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits that it creates and maintains, as necessary for its fair uses, more than one copy of the books it scans from library collections, and that it has scanned millions of books from library collections. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 12:

Google uses the works copied in its Library Project to display search results to users of its search engine.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 12:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous. Google objects to this Request to the extent it requests information pertaining to Google products other than Google Books, and Google's response is limited to Google Books.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits that one of the fair uses to which it puts books is rendering them searchable using the Google Books website. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 13:

In response to search queries by users of its search engine, Google has displayed content on the Internet from millions of in-copyright works, without permission from the copyright owner of such works.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 13:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous. Google objects to this Request to the extent it requests information pertaining to Google products other than Google Books, and Google's response is limited to Google Books.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits in response to search queries by users of Google Books, in order to help users find the book they're looking for, Google has displayed short "snippets" of text from millions of books to those users, though it only displays a maximum of three "snippets" in response to a search query. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 14:

In response to search inquiries by users of its search engine, Google searches the complete text of works copied in its Library Project.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 14:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous. Google objects to this Request to the extent it requests information pertaining to Google products other than Google Books, and Google's response is limited to Google Books.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits in response to search queries by users of its Google Books website, in order to help users find the book they're looking for, Google searches the complete text of at least some of the works scanned from library collections. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 15:

None of the representative plaintiffs gave permission to Google to copy, distribute or display any of their works.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 15:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to this Request to the extent it requests information pertaining to Google products other than Google Books, and Google's response is limited to Google Books.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits that the representative plaintiffs themselves did not give Google any permissions with respect to any of their books, as Google's acts constituted fair use, although their publishers gave Google certain permissions with respect to some of their works. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 16:

Google did not seek permission from any of the representative plaintiffs to copy, distribute or display any of their works.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 16:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to this Request to the extent it requests information pertaining to Google products other than Google Books, and Google's response is limited to Google Books.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits that, because its acts constituted fair use, Google did not seek any permission from the representative plaintiffs themselves, although their publishers gave Google certain permissions with respect to some of their works. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 17:

Google did not seek permission from copyright owners before copying in-copyright works in its Library Project.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 17:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits that before beginning to scan works from libraries, because its acts constituted fair use, it generally did not seek or receive permissions from copyright holders with respect to its project of

scanning books from libraries. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 18:

Google has not compensated copyright owners for its copying in its Library Project of incopyright works.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 18:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits that it has not provided direct monetary compensation to copyright holders with respect to its scanning of books from libraries and the display of short "snippets" of text in response to search queries. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 19:

Google has not compensated copyright owners for its display on the Internet of content from in-copyright works copied in its Library Project.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 19:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits that it has not provided direct monetary compensation to copyright holders with respect to its scanning of books from libraries and the display of short "snippets" of text in response to search queries. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 20:

Google's security measures may be breached due to the actions of outside parties, employee error, malfeasance, or otherwise, and, as a result, an unauthorized party may obtain access to data held by Google, including works copied in its Library Project.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 20:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it presents a hypothetical question. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it is vague and ambiguous, including without limitation in its use of the term "security." Google objects to this Request to the extent it requests information pertaining to Google products other than Google Books, and Google's response is limited to Google Books.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 21:

Outside parties may attempt to fraudulently induce Google employees, users, or customers to disclose sensitive information in order to gain access to data held by Google.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 21:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it presents a hypothetical question. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it is vague and ambiguous. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it seeks

information pertaining to the state of mind of third parties, of which Google has no direct knowledge. Google objects to this Request to the extent it requests information pertaining to Google products other than Google Books, and Google's response is limited to Google Books.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 22:

Because the techniques used by outside parties to obtain unauthorized access to data change frequently and often are not recognized until launched against a target, Google may be unable to anticipate these techniques or to implement adequate preventative measures.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 22:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it presents a hypothetical question. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it is vague and ambiguous. Google objects to this Request to the extent it requests information pertaining to Google products other than Google Books, and Google's response is limited to Google Books.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 23:

Google does not consider itself responsible for the security of the digital copies of works provided by it to libraries in its Library Project.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 23:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it is vague and ambiguous, including without limitation in its use of the term "security."

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 24:

Google does not monitor or control the security of the digital copies of works provided by it to libraries in its Library Project.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 24:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it is vague and ambiguous, including without limitation in its use of the terms "monitor," "control," and "security." Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copies" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term as it is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 25:

The security measures of libraries who receive digital copies of works from Google may be breached due to the actions of outside parties, employee error, malfeasance, or otherwise, and, as a result, an unauthorized party may obtain access to data held by such libraries.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 25:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it presents a hypothetical question. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it is vague and ambiguous, including without limitation in its use of the term "security." Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copies" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term as it is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 26:

Outside parties may attempt to fraudulently induce library employees or patrons to disclose sensitive information in order to gain access to data held by the library.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 26:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it presents a hypothetical question. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it is vague and ambiguous. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it seeks information pertaining to the state of mind of third parties, of which Google has no direct knowledge.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 27:

Because the techniques used by outside parties to obtain unauthorized access to data change frequently and often are not recognized until launched against a target, libraries may be unable to anticipate these techniques or to implement adequate preventative measures.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 27:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it presents a hypothetical question. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it is vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 28:

Google pays license fees and royalties to certain content providers to display content on its website.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 28:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it is vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Google admits that it pays license fees to certain content providers to display certain content on certain websites that Google operates. Except as specifically admitted, Google responds as follows:

Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 29:

Google does not use the works copied in its Library Project for the purpose of criticism.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 29:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it calls for a legal conclusion. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 30:

Google does not use the works copied in its Library Project for the purpose of commenting on the works.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 30:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request on the

ground that it calls for a legal conclusion. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 31:

Google does not use the works copied in its Library Project for the purpose of news reporting.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 31:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it calls for a legal conclusion. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 32:

Google does not use the works copied in its Library Project for the purpose of teaching.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 32:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it calls for a legal conclusion. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies,

as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 33:

Google does not use the works copied in its Library Project for the purpose of scholarship.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 33:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it calls for a legal conclusion. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 34:

Google does not use the works copied in its Library Project for the purpose of research.

RESPONSE TO REQUEST FOR ADMISSION NO. 34:

Google objects to this request to the extent it calls for the disclosure of material protected by the attorney-client privilege or any other privilege. Google objects to this Request on the ground that it calls for a legal conclusion. Google objects to this Request's use of the term "copy" as vague and ambiguous, and construes that term to mean "to create one or more copies, as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. § 101." Google objects to the definition of "Library Project" as vague and ambiguous.

Subject to and without waiving its objections, Google responds as follows: Denied.

Dated: December 22, 2011

By: /s/Joseph C. Gratz

Daralyn J. Durie (pro hac vice) ddurie@durietangri.com Joseph C. Gratz (pro hac vice) jgratz@durietangri.com DURIE TANGRI LLP 217 Leidesdorff Street San Francisco, CA 94111 Telephone: 415-362-6666

Facsimile: 415-236-6300

Attorneys for Defendant Google Inc.

PROOF OF SERVICE

I am a citizen of the United States and resident of the State of California. I am employed in San Francisco County, State of California, in the office of a member of the State Bar of California, at whose direction the service was made. I am over the age of eighteen years, and not a party to the within action. My business address is 217 Leidesdorff Street, San Francisco, CA 94111.

On December 22, 2011, I served the following document(s) in the manner described below:

DEFENDANT GOOGLE INC.'S RESPONSES TO PLAINTIFFS' FIRST SET OF REQUESTS FOR ADMISSION

Control of the Contro	(BY U.S. MAIL) I am personally and readily familiar with the business practice of Durie Tangri LLP for collection and processing of correspondence for mailing with the United States Postal Service, and I caused such envelope(s) with postage thereon fully prepaid to be placed in the United States Postal Service at San Francisco, California.
	(BY MESSENGER SERVICE) by consigning the document(s) to an authorized courier and/or process server for hand delivery on this date.
produces some	(BY FACSIMILE) I am personally and readily familiar with the business practice of Durie Tangri LLP for collection and processing of document(s) to be transmitted by facsimile and I caused such document(s) on this date to be transmitted by facsimile to the offices of addressee(s) at the numbers listed below.
Account of the second	(BY OVERNIGHT MAIL) I am personally and readily familiar with the business practice of Durie Tangri LLP for collection and processing of correspondence for overnight delivery, and I caused such document(s) described herein to be deposited for delivery to a facility regularly maintained by Federal Express for overnight delivery.
X	BY ELECTRONIC SERVICE: By electronically mailing a true and correct copy through Durie Tangri's electronic mail system from jgratz@durietangri.com to the email addresses set forth below.
	(BY PERSONAL DELIVERY) I caused such envelope to be delivered by hand to the offices of each addressee below.

On the following part(ies) in this action:

Michael J. Boni Joanne E. Zack BONI & ZACK LLC 15 St. Asaphs Road Bala Cynwyd, PA 19004 Telephone: 610-822-0200 Fax: 610-822-0206 Email: mboni@bonizack.com jzack@bonizack.com

Attorneys for Plaintiffs

I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States of America that the foregoing is true and correct. Executed on December 22, 2011, in San Francisco, California.

/s/ Joseph C. Gratz
Joseph C. Gratz

EXHIBIT 2

Expert Report of Ben Edelman

Introduction and qualifications

- 1. I am an assistant professor at Harvard Business School. My research focuses on the design of electronic marketplaces including Internet advertising, search engines, privacy, and information security. I hold a Ph.D. in Economics from Harvard University, a J.D. from Harvard Law School, an A.M. in statistics from Harvard University, and an A.B. in economics from Harvard College. Further information concerning my background and qualifications is provided in my curriculum vitae, which is attached hereto as Exhibit A.
- 2. My experience includes more than 15 years as a computer programmer, in which time I developed software for my own use, end-user computers, local networks, and web servers; and administered servers for myself and others. My technical experience includes efforts to verify the security of other programmers' code including uncovering shortfalls in others' security systems. I have studied and written about questions of information security, accidental information revelation, and information distributed more broadly than online services anticipated. For example, I have personally uncovered multiple Google privacy flaws, including improper data collection by Google Toolbar as well as improper data distribution by Google JotSpot. I also found and demonstrated to a court's satisfaction that an early online video service, iCraveTV, had failed to secure video contents in the way that it had previously represented to that court.
- 3. My academic publications explore a variety of aspects of online business, including multiple articles considering the difficulty of limiting access to and use of information systems. A full list of my publications is provided in my curriculum vitae, which is attached hereto as Exhibit A. Among the publications relevant to questions at issue in this matter are the following articles: In "Shortcomings and Challenges in the Restriction of Internet Retransmissions of Over-the-air Television Content to Canadian Internet Users," a submission to Industry Canada, I evaluated the difficulty of imposing certain access restrictions when distributing video material over the Internet. In "Securing Online Advertising: Rustlers and Sheriffs in the New Wild West," I presented the challenges of designing online advertising markets to satisfy the requirements of advertisers, online publishers, and advertising platforms while unauthorized activities such as advertising fraud are taking place. In numerous articles, I have presented all manner of online miscreants using information systems in ways their providers did not intend, did not anticipate, sought to prevent, and/or claimed to seek to prevent.
- 4. My teaching assignment currently consists of a HBS elective course called *The Online Economy*, which analyzes strategies for all manner of online businesses. The course includes concerns arising out information security.
- 5. I have testified as an expert witness in federal courts, and I have testified to committees of the United States House of Representative and United States Senate. I have offered expert testimony in the U.S. District Courts for Michigan and Pennsylvania and in Utah State Court. A listing of the cases in which I have testified as an expert at trial or by deposition during the past four years is attached as Exhibit B.
- 6. I am being compensated for my work in this matter at the rate of \$450 per hour.

Scope of retention

- 7. I understand Google is asserting a fair use defense to the allegations that, without permission from rights-holders, it digitized millions of in-copyright books from a number of university libraries, maintains digital copies of those books on its servers, distributed digital copies of those books to the libraries, and displays on the Internet verbatim content from the books. In this report, I address and opine on risks of a security breach exposing widely online the contents of in-copyright books from (a) the scanning, storage and display of books (or book excerpts) by smaller, less sophisticated entities that, under an adverse fair use ruling, would be permitted to engage in conduct similar to Google's Library Project, (b) Google's distribution of digital copies of scanned books to libraries, and (c) Google's retention and storage of multiple copies of the millions of books it digitizes in its Library Project.
- 8. I conclude that unrestricted and widespread conduct of the sort engaged in by Google would result in a substantially adverse impact on the potential market for books.
- 9. If the Google Library Project is found not to be a fair use, then the books could be digitally copied, distributed and displayed through licenses that include security protocols and a damages structure for breaches of those protocols. Conversely, if such uses are deemed permissible without requiring permission from rights-holders -- i.e., if fair use were to be found here -- then rights-holders will have little or no means to reduce the security risks identified in this report.
- 10. Exhibit C lists the documents I reviewed and sources I considered.

Piracy of books is already a real, not hypothetical problem

- 11. The electronic distribution of electronic copies of books, without authorization from publishers or rights-holders, is already occurring. For example, consider a user seeking a copy of "American Sniper," the number one bestseller hardcover nonfiction book according to the New York Times bestseller list dated April 1, 2012. Such a user might run a Google search for "american sniper mobi" (without quotes), using the word "mobi" to indicate interest in a ".mobi" book (a popular electronic book file format). The first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, eighth, ninth, and tenth-listed links all offer or purport to offer copies of the specified book. I checked these nine links; I found that all but one confirmed that the book was available and offered a download link or download instructions. Of the ten links, only one (the seventh) pointed to a site (Amazon) that charged for access to the book. Of course the book is a top-selling in-copyright commercial publication; anyone offering no-charge copies is almost certainly doing so without permission from the copyright holder.
- 12. Sites with pirated books fall into several categories. Some sites charge for pirated book copies, though they do not share the resulting revenues with those who created the books. Other sites distribute pirated book copies for free. Among sites offering free book copies, some offer direct web-based downloads, providing pirated book copies when a user simply clicks to request a copy. Other sites offer links to Bit torrent ".torrent" files that direct a user's computer to other computers from which a desired file may be copied.

Similar Scanning Operations Could Allow Book Copies to Be Copied and Redistributed

- 13. If Google's conduct is found to be a fair use and others engage in similar conduct, a risk is created of book redistribution through piracy.
- 14. If other providers ("providers") scan books, the resulting digital book copies could enter widespread public circulation via any of several channels. First, pirates could extract book copies through defects in the security of a provider's systems. Once books are scanned, the resulting digital files are stored on a server or, more often, multiple servers. Defects in the access controls of any such server could allow pirates to gain access to digital book copies. Defects could arise through flaws in the operating system, database server, web server, or other software run on a provider's servers; such flaws have been widespread in even the most popular server software. Defects could also arise through the provider's custom software, which is likely to be less secure because custom software usually receives a lesser level of scrutiny, testing, and verification than software that is distributed and used more broadly.
- 15. Second, pirates could extract books via errors in the security configuration of a provider's systems. If even one of a provider's servers lacks a required update or other security feature, pirates could use that server to obtain the book copies.
- 16. Third, pirates could extract books by impersonating provider staff to access provider systems. Suppose an attacker can obtain the username and password of a person with full access to a provider's book copies. The attacker can log in with that password to access and copy the provider's book copies. Similar attacks are frequent: For example Amazon Zappos, ¹ Gawker, ² and Microsoft Hotmail ³ suffered similar attacks in 2009-2011. Even the United Nations suffered a breach of the same type. ⁴ If a single staff person at a single book provider used the same password for a hacked site and for access to book copies, then a hacker could use that password to access book copies, copy book copies to the hacker's own systems, and redistribute book copies further from there.
- 17. Fourth, a rogue employee could intentionally redistribute book copies. Rogue employees gain and exploit privileged access to data despite organizations' efforts to screen and supervise key staff. Consider the classified US State Department material distributed by Wikileaks in 2010 information obtained via a rogue employee. A rogue employee with access to book copies could intentionally make those copies available to the public.
- 18. Fifth, when books are scanned by a smaller and less sophisticated provider, there is a particularly acute risk of book contents being accessed and redistributed. For one, less sophisticated organizations have a reduced capability to design, install, and maintain suitable web site, database, and related security systems as well as anti-reconstruction

¹ Dominic Rushe. "Zappos Database Hit by Cyberattack." The Guardian. January 16, 2012.

² Zachary Seward and Albert Sun. "The Top 50 Gawker Media Passwords." Wall Street Journal - Digits. December 13, 2010.

³ Bogdan Calin. "Statistics from 10,000 Leaked Hotmail Passwords." Acunetix. October 6, 2009. http://www.acunetix.com/blog/news/statistics-from-10000-leaked-hotmail-passwords/.

⁴ Chloe Albanesius. "Team Poison Hacks UN, Leaks Usernames, Passwords." PC Magazine. November 30, 2011.

systems to secure books. Furthermore, less sophisticated organizations have a lesser ability to screen key staff to prevent data loss through rogue employees, and a lesser ability to configure security systems to exclude hackers. Thus, if other companies and organizations follow Google's lead in scanning books, a risk exists that book contents will be accessed and redistributed.

19. As set out in the section captioned "A Single Breach Could Cause Devastating Harm to the Class," one instance of book copying can have large effects. For example, if numerous companies and organizations scan books, attackers can focus their efforts on whichever installs the weakest security. Similarly, attackers can take advantage of even a brief period when a single book provider is insecure (for example, through failure to properly update a server). Once attackers obtain book copies, they can then redistribute the copies as desired. If many providers begin scanning and storing digital book copies, the affected books are only as secure as the least secure provider – so the diligent efforts of some providers would be undermined by lax security of others.

Breaches in Libraries' Systems Could Facilitate Book Piracy

- 20. I understand that the Google Library Project includes providing to its library partners a full digital copy of the books the libraries allowed Google to scan. Breaches in the security systems at these libraries could facilitate book piracy.
- 21. I have not been informed of all the ways that libraries intend to use the book contents data they receive from Google, nor have I been informed how libraries intend to secure that data. But the information currently available indicates that libraries' actions present a risk of book piracy.
- 22. If libraries provide book contents in a way where authorized library users can access the data, it is likely that some users will attempt to exceed the intended scope of authorization to access and copy book contents en masse. For example, in July 2011, a student used MIT library access to download 4.8 million articles and other documents.⁵
- 23. Structural factors also increase the difficulty of libraries properly securing book contents. University libraries typically serve myriad users including students, visitors, and others with limited long-term connection to the library - limiting a library's ability to establish accountability. Moreover, libraries typically specialize in making information available rather than in restricting how information may be used. While some libraries offer electronic resources that are subject to restrictions on use, these restrictions are typically implemented by keeping the information on the information provider's servers so that the information provider, not the library, can monitor usage and attempt to assure compliance. For example, when a library licenses journals and articles and other documents from the JSTOR digital archive, libraries do not receive full copies of the articles to store on library servers. Instead, libraries receive secure access to JSTOR servers, allowing library patrons to access individual documents on JSTOR without ever receiving the full corpus of all articles JSTOR holds. Access to documents held by Lexis-Nexis and Westlaw is similar. In contrast, the book contents here at issue would be stored on libraries' servers without an outside third party to assure and enforce compliance with access restrictions.

⁵ United States of America v. Aaron Swartz. Indictment. July14, 2011.

- 24. The likely uses of digital book copies further exacerbate the risk of copying. A natural use of digital book copies is to analyze patterns in book text. From the perspective of a researcher seeking to perform such analysis, it is natural to begin by copying digital book copies onto a system the researcher controls, allowing the researcher to run flexible and high-speed searches of those book copies using the researcher's preferred tools. (In contrast, if the researcher had to run analyses on a server controlled by the library, the researcher would ordinarily be able to use only those tools the library provides, and the speed of the researcher's analysis might be constrained by server capacity and availability.) Crucially, once a researcher copies the data onto his own system, the library's prior security efforts (whatever they might be) are largely irrelevant. A researcher might even store digital book copies on a laptop or USB drive, where loss and theft are particularly frequent. When book copies are processed into text using optical character recognition, the resulting files can be quite small making it feasible to store tens of thousands of book copies on an ordinary laptop or USB drive.
- 25. A further risk of book piracy from or via university libraries comes from the culture of "pranks" enjoyed by many software and engineering students. For example, the MIT Hack Gallery presents hundreds of hacks including public displays of the Apple logo, the logo of the Boston Red Sox, and the logos of various movies.⁶
- 26. In its agreement with the University of Michigan, Google has specifically avoided responsibility for monitoring how libraries store or use book contents. The University of Michigan agreement specifically speaks to Google's duty of care over physical books in Google's custody (including the risk of loss, damage, pests, fire, theft, and the like). However, the agreement offers limited commitments as to the University of Michigan's duty to keep secure its Digital Copy of the book contents. For example, Google's agreement with University of Michigan provides the use of robots.txt as a supposed "technological measure ... to restrict automated access" to the Digital Copy, but robots.txt offers no genuine security protection and instead relies on a requester's compliance with stated restrictions on access. The other provisions of Google's agreement with University of Michigan are vague ("reasonable efforts," "cooperate in good faith to mutually develop methods," etc.). These vague provisions offer significantly lower protection than Google provides for even its routine business confidences.

Google Itself Is Not Immune to Design Flaws and Security Breaches

27. Despite Google's considerable resources, Google products and services nonetheless suffer from design flaws and security breaches which result in information flowing in ways Google and/or users did not intend.

⁶ http://hacks.mit.edu/

⁷ Cooperative Agreement between Google Inc. and Regents of the University of Michigan, sections 2.3.1 and 2.7.

⁸ Cooperative Agreement between Google Inc. and Regents of the University of Michigan, sections 4.4.1-2. ⁹ For example, the Google NDA presented at http://valleywag.com/230407/this-nda-never-existed offers greater protection including greater restrictions on the circumstances in which information can be shared, greater restrictions on the permissible recipients of such information, and more precise requirements as to how information must be secured.

28. In general, Google faces each of the vulnerabilities detailed in "Similar Scanning Operations Could Allow Book Copies to Be Copied and Redistributed" above. The following sections flag specific problems that could occur, as well as noting similar problems Google has already faced.

Google's Security Systems are not Failproof

- 29. In other information and distribution services, Google has failed to comply with its commitments to users and the public. For example, in January 2010, I found and reported the popular Google Toolbar program installed on "hundreds of millions" of computers 10 continuing to track users' browsing (including every web page visited) even after users had specifically requested that the Toolbar be "disable[d]" and even after the Toolbar had confirmed users' request and disappeared from screen. 11 The user browsing at issue was users' most sensitive online activities: reasonable users would activate the Toolbar's "disable tracking" feature exactly when they sought to engage in private activities they did not wish Google to track. Google subsequently characterized its nonconsensual information collection as "an issue" 12 but offered no explanation for why it collected information users had specifically indicated, and Google had agreed, should not be collected. Google has paid no compensation to affected users. Neither did Google promise to undo the error: Google never offered to let affected users identify themselves so Google could delete their data from its records.
- 30. In spring 2010, Google introduced Buzz, a social network for connecting to online colleagues and sharing information about who is doing what. For users of Google's email service, Gmail, Buzz shared with the general public the names of the persons Gmail users corresponded with – information Google had previously indicated it would keep confidential. Google subsequently faced class litigation for this information breach, alleging that affected users suffered direct economic loss as a result of Google's information revelation. For example, Buzz revealed the persons sending email to and receiving email from Andrew McLaughlin, who had previously served as a Google lobbyist, and was working in the White House as deputy Chief Technology Officer of the United States. Buzz's information revelation indicated that Mr. McLaughlin had engaged in impermissible activities with his prior employers, in violation of White House ethics rules. After Buzz-posted information prompted a complaint and an investigation, Mr. McLaughlin was formally reprimanded for the improper communications. ¹³ To the best of my knowledge, Google never offered any compensation to Mr. McLaughlin or other affected Gmail users.

¹⁰ Ian Paul. "Google Toolbar Tracks Some Browsing Even When It's Not Supposed To." PC World. January 25, 2010.

http://www.pcworld.com/article/187670/google_toolbar_tracks_some_browsing_even_when_its_not_supp_osed_to.html .

Benjamin Edelman. "Google Toolbar Tracks Browsing Even After Users Choose 'Disable'." January 26, 2010. http://www.benedelman.org/news/012610-1.html.

¹² Barry Schwarz. "Disabling The Google Toolbar Doesn't Stop Google From Tracking You." January 26, 2010. http://searchengineland.com/disabling-the-google-toolbar-doesnt-stop-google-from-tracking-you-34438

¹³ J. Nicholas Hoover. "White House Reprimands Deputy CTO." Information Week. May 17, 2010. http://www.informationweek.com/news/government/leadership/224900083.

- 31. In addition, during February 2012, researchers discovered that Google was bypassing Safari and Internet Explorer privacy settings to collect data that those browsers would ordinarily decline to provide. While Google ceased further collection via these methods, Google has not offered to delete information improperly collected, nor has Google offered to compensate affected users.
- 32. In each of these examples, Google's services worked in exactly the way Google's engineers designed, in a way any Google engineer could have noticed through straightforward testing and, in many instances, in a way Google staff specifically intended. Yet Google lacked authorization for these information collection and distribution practices.

Rogue Google Employees Could Access or Redistribute Book Contents

33. In September 2010, news reports revealed that David Barksdale, a senior Google engineer, had used his privileged position at Google to spy on four teenagers for months. Because Barksdale was a Site Reliability Engineer at Google, he was able to tap into call logs for Google Voice (records of phone calls to and from the youths), read the youths' instant message chat logs, and unblock himself from buddy lists in order to send instant messages to and from the youths. Barksdale used each of these methods to access the communications of the affected youths. While Google terminated Barksdale's employment after these practices became known, Barksdale was able to continue his practices for months without Google's internal controls noticing what he was doing. Google subsequently admitted that it had previously caught at least one other Google staff person accessing user data without authorization.

Hackers Could Access or Redistribute Book Contents

- 34. Outside hackers could access or redistribute book contents. Many hackers disagree with the public policy embodied in applicable copyright law. For example, during January 2012, hackers disabled web sites of the U.S. Department of Justice and FBI, trade associations Recording Industry Association of America and Motion Picture Association of America, and record labels Universal, BMI, and Warner Music Group, when hackers disapproved of possible revisions to copyright law then under discussion in Congress. ¹⁷ Google's digitized book contents thus could attract hackers seeking to redistribute notable information.
- 35. In January 2010, Google reported a "highly sophisticated and targeted attack on our corporate infrastructure originating from China that resulted in the theft of intellectual

¹⁴ Jonathan Mayer. "Safari Trackers." February 17, 2012. http://cyberlaw.stanford.edu/blog/2012/02/safari-trackers.

¹⁵ Adrian Chen. "GCreep: Google Engineer Stalked Teens, Spied on Chats." Gawker. September 14, 2010. http://gawker.com/5637234/gcreep-google-engineer-stalked-teens-spied-on-chats.

¹⁶ Jacon Kincaid. "This Is the Second Time a Google Engineer Has Been Fired for Accessing User Data." TechCrunch. September 14, 2010.

¹⁷ Ingrid Lunden. "SOPA Blackout, Anonymous-Style: FBI, DOJ Sites Downed In Megaupload Protest." paidContent.org. January 19, 2012. http://paidcontent.org/article/419-sopa-blackout-anonymous-style-dojriaa-hacked-in-megaupload-protest/.

property from Google."¹⁸ A subsequent analysis by McAfee indicated that hackers had specifically sought access to the source code for Google systems, and that hackers had even obtained the ability to alter the source code for Google systems.¹⁹ If Google cannot keep its own intellectual property secure from attackers, it is plausible to conclude that Google cannot keep book contents invulnerable to security breaches.

A Single Breach Could Cause Devastating Harm to the Class

- 36. A single breach of the systems that store book contents could allow book contents to become ubiquitous online. In particular, after that single breach occurs, users are likely to copy and/or share the material en masse, preventing any subsequent efforts to resecure book contents. For example, on August 4, 2006, AOL posted twenty million searches performed by more than 650,000 users over a three-month period. Once AOL realized that posting this information was inadvisable (because it included myriad sensitive subjects and could be easily linked to individual AOL users), AOL removed the file from its servers the same week, but the file remains easily available, including on the web and via BitTorrent. Similarly, Wikileaks in February 2010 began publishing hundreds of thousands of pages of classified material. The information remains easily available, including via straightforward Google searches. The information simply cannot be "unpublished" once it has become publicly available on the Internet.
- 37. Thus, if book contents become available once via a breach of book copies scanned by others, via a breach in libraries' copies of books scanned by Google, or via a breach of Google's own systems the book contents are likely to be available easily and indefinitely.
- 38. However remote one may consider the risk of book contents becoming available, that risk must be considered in light of the devastating impact to the Class if book contents become available.

Conclusion

39. If Google's practices of digitally copying, distributing and displaying books without rightsholder permission are found to be fair uses and become widespread, the market for books will be adversely impacted by the potential for security breaches. Conversely, requiring Google and others to obtain the permission of rights-holders before engaging in such practices could prompt negotiations between rights-holders and those who seek to digitally use their works, thereby fostering standards for the allocation of the costs and risks of any harm flowing from such security breaches.

http://googleblog.blogspot.com/2010/01/new-approach-to-china.html.

¹⁸ David Drummond. Official Google Blog. January 12, 2010.

¹⁹ McAfee Labs. "Protecting Your Critical Assets: Lessons Learned from 'Operation Aurora." March 2010. http://www.wired.com/images_blogs/threatlevel/2010/03/operationaurora_wp_0310_fnl.pdf.
²⁰ For example, I searched Google for "AOL search torrent" (without quotes) on March 27, 2012. Among the first ten results, I found six locations where I could download the files. http://gregsadetsky.com/aol-data/ presents nine different locations where the data remains available.

Signed April 2 2012,

况为6人

Benjamin Edelman

EXHIBIT A

27a Linnaean St. Cambridge, MA 02138

Benjamin G. Edelman

ben@benedelman.org (617) 359-3360

Experience

Assistant professor, Harvard Business School. Negotiations, Organizations & Markets unit. (April 2007 – present)

Fields: Industrial organization, market design, information economics.

Research interests: Electronic markets. Internet advertising, reputation, and fraud. Automated data collection.

Teaching: Networked businesses, market design, information systems, online marketing, negotiation.

Independent consultant and expert witness (November 1999 – present)

Conducted quantitative analyses and empirical testing for a variety of clients including the American Civil Liberties Union, AOL, Microsoft, National Association of Broadcasters, National Football League, New York Times, Universal Music Group, and Washington Post on topics including online advertising, advertising fraud, spyware, spam, pay-per-click advertising and click fraud, Internet filtering, geolocation and targeting, privacy, security, automated data collection, and user interface design. Qualified as an expert in Federal court on multiple occasions, and provided oral testimony under direct and cross examination.

Student Fellow / Technology Analyst, Berkman Center for Internet & Society (May 1998 – January 2004)

Conducted empirical studies of the Internet's domain name system, spyware/adware, content filtering by network intermediaries.

Developed software systems for interactive real-time communication among class/meeting participants. Designed and operated system for webcast of and remote participation in numerous Berkman Center, Harvard Law School, and Cambridge community events as well as twelve ICANN public meetings.

Education

Harvard Graduate School of Arts & Sciences - Ph.D., Economics, 2007. Dissertation: "Topics in Internet Advertising."

Harvard Law School - J.D., 2005.

Harvard Graduate School of Arts & Sciences - A.M., Statistics, 2002.

Harvard College - A.B., Economics, summa cum laude, 2002; Phi Beta Kappa.

Woodrow Wilson Senior High School - Washington, DC: 1998; valedictorian.

Representative Research

Internet Advertising and the Generalized Second Price Auction (American Economic Review, 2007) with Michael Ostrovsky and Michael Schwarz

Optimal Auction Design and Equilibrium Selection in Sponsored Search Auctions (American Economic Review, 2010)

with Michael Schwarz

Strategic Bidder Behavior in Sponsored Search Auctions (Decision Support Systems, 2007) with Michael Ostrovsky

Measuring the Perpetrators and Funders of Typosquatting (FC'10, SV LNCS) with Tyler Moore; web introduction and appendix also available

Greedy Bidding Strategies for Keyword Auctions (Proceedings of the 9th ACM Conference on Electronic Commerce, 2007)

with Matthew Cary, Aparna Das, Ioannis Giotis, Kurtis Heimerl, Anna Karlin, Claire Mathieu, and Michael Schwarz

On Best-Response Bidding in GSP Auctions (2008)

with Matthew Cary, Aparna Das, Ioannis Giotis, Kurtis Heimerl, Anna Karlin, Claire Mathieu, and Michael Schwarz

Running Out of Numbers: Scarcity of IPv4 Addresses and What To Do About It (Proceedings of AMMA, 2009)

Adverse Selection in Online "Trust" Certifications (*Proceedings of ICEC 2009*)

Adverse Selection in Online "Trust" Certifications and Search Results (Electronic Commerce Research and Applications, 2011)

Deterring Online Advertising Fraud Through Optimal Payment in Arrears (FC'09, SV LNCS)

Securing Online Advertising: Rustlers and Sheriffs in the New Wild West (published in Beautiful Security, 2009)

Assessing and Improving the Safety of Internet Search Engines (published in *The Rising Power of Search Engines on the Internet*, 2006)

Web Sites Sharing IP Addresses: Prevalence and Significance (2003) cyber.law.harvard.edu/people/edelman/ip-sharing

Empirical Analysis of Internet Filtering in China (2002) with Jonathan Zittrain cyber.law.harvard.edu/filtering/china Published in *IEEE Internet Computing* as "Internet Filtering in China" (March-April 2003)

Long-Term Research Projects

Strategies and Outcomes in Search Engine Advertising (2004-)

"Spyware": Research, Testing, Legislation, and Suits (2002-) benedelman.org/spyware

Resources for Affiliates and Affiliate Merchants (2004-) benedelman.org/affiliates

Documentation of Internet Filtering Worldwide (2002-2003) with Jonathan Zittrain cyber.law.harvard.edu/filtering

The Top-Level Domain Evaluation Project (2002-2003) with Jonathan Zittrain cyber.law.harvard.edu/tlds

Classroom and Meeting Technology Tools (1998-2002) cyber.law.harvard.edu/meetingtools

ICANN Public Meeting Archives, Notes, and Briefing Books (1998-2001) cyber.law.harvard.edu/icann cyber.law.harvard.edu/ifwp

Additional Writings

Advertising Disclosures: Measuring Labeling Alternatives in Internet Search Engines (2012) with Duncan Gilchrist Information Economics and Policy

Internet Protocol Numbers and the American Registry for Internet Numbers: Suggested Guidance for Bankruptcy Trustees, Debtors-in-Possession, and Receivers. BNA's Bankruptcy Law Reporter (2012) with Steven Ryan and Matthew Martel

Pricing and Efficiency in the Market for IP Addresses (2011) with Michael Schwarz

The Design of Online Advertising Markets (forthcoming) Handbook of Market Design

Earnings and Ratings at Google Answers (forthcoming) Economic Inquiry

Bias in Search Results?: Diagnosis and Response (2011) The Indian Journal of Law and Technology

Measuring Bias in "Organic" Web Search (2011) with Ben Lockwood benedelman.org/searchbias

To Groupon or Not to Groupon: The Profitability of Deep Discounts (2010) HBS Working Paper – with Scott Kominers and Sonia Jaffe and To Groupon or Not To Groupon: New Research on Voucher Profitability (2011) HBR Blogs

Least-Cost Avoiders in Online Fraud and Abuse (2010) IEEE Security and Privacy

The Pathologies of Online Display Advertising Marketplaces (2010) ACM Sigecom Exchanges

Competing Ad Auctions: Multi-homing and Participation Costs (2010) with Itai Ashlagi and Hoan Soo Lee

Priced and Unpriced Online Markets (2009) (Journal of Economic Perspectives, summer 2009)

Red Light States: Who Buys Online Adult Entertainment? (2009) (Journal of Economic Perspectives, winter 2009)

Who Owns Metrics?: Building a Bill of Rights for Online Advertisers (2009) (Journal of Advertising Research, Dec. 2009)

How to Combat Online Ad Fraud (2009) Harvard Business Review

The Dark Underbelly of Online Advertising (2009) Harvard Business Review Online - HBR Now

Fraud in Online Advertising (2009) The Business Standard (India)

Typosquatting: Unintended Adventures in Browsing (2008) McAfee Security Journal

CPC/CPA Hybrid Bidding in a Second Price Auction (2008) with Hoan Soo Lee

When the Net Goes Dark and Silent (2002) South China Morning Post (op-ed)

The Effect of Editorial Discretion Book Promotion on Sales at Amazon.com (2001-2002)
Seymour and Ruth Harris Prize for Best Thesis in Economics, Thomas Temple Hoopes Prize for Undergraduate Research

Web Site Writings

Search My Logs of Affiliate Fraud and Affiliate Fraud Information Lookup (2012) with Wesley Brandi

Hack-Based Cookie-Stuffing by Bannertracker-script (2012) benedelman.org/news/022712-1.html with Wesley Brandi

Large-Scale Cookie-Stuffing at Eshop600.co.uk (2012) benedelman.org/news/013012-1.html with Wesley Brandi

Advertising Disclosures in Online Apartment Search (2012) benedelman.org/adlabeling/apartmentsearch with Paul Kominers

Google Tying Google Plus and Many More (2012) benedelman.org/news/011212-1.html

Revisiting Search Bias at Google (2011) benedelman.org/news/111111-1.html

Understanding the Purposes – and Weaknesses – of Online-to-Offline Discounting Pymnts.com (2011)

Towards Improvement in Singapore's Transportation Efficiency and Environmental Impact (2011) submission to the National Climate Change Secretariat of Singapore

Google's Dominance – And What To Do About It and Finding and Preventing Biased Results (2011)

American Constitution Society for Law and Policy – Blog Debate

Advertisers' Missing Perspective in the Google Antitrust Hearing (2011) benedelman.org/news/092011-1.html

Implications of Google's Pharmacy Debacle (2011) benedelman.org/news/082611-1.html and republished at Betanews

Online Discount Vouchers - Letter-Writing Tool (2011) vouchercomplaints.org with Paul Kominers & Xiaoxiao Wu

Consumer Protection in Online Discount Voucher Sales (2011) benedelman.org/voucher-consumer-protection with Paul Kominers

Revisiting Unlawful Advertisements at Google (2011) benedelman.org/news/051811-1.html and excerpted at Huffington Post

Personal Rapid Transport - Environmental Issues for Earth Day (2011) hbs.edu/news/releases/earthday042011.html

Remedies for Search Bias (2011) benedelman.org/news/022211-1.html

In Accusing Microsoft, Google Doth Protest Too Much (2011) HBR Blogs

Knowing Certain Trademark Ads Were Confusing, Google Sold Them Anyway -- for \$100+ Million (2010) benedelman.org/news/113010-1.html

Advertisers Should Raise Their Voices Against Arrogant Google (2010) mUmBRELLA

Hard-Coding Bias in Google 'Algorithmic' Search Results (2010) benedelman.org/hardcoding

A Closer Look at Google's Advertisement Labels (2010) benedelman.org/adlabeling/google-nov2010.html

On Facebook and Privacy (2010) www.hbs.edu/news/releases/facultyonfacebookprivacy.html

Tying Google Affiliate Network (2010) benedelman.org/news/092810-1.html

Facebook Leaks Usernames, User IDs, and Personal Details to Advertisers (2010) benedelman.org/news/052010-1.html

Sony's Crackle: Invisible Traffic Galore (2010) benedelman.org/news/042710-1.html

Protecting Privacy by Design (2010) McAfee AVERT Blog

Google's Privacy Breach: Lessons for Companies (2010) Harvard Business Review Online - HBR Now

Google Toolbar Tracks Browsing Even After Users Choose "Disable" (2010) benedelman.org/news/012610-1.html

Upromise Savings -- At What Cost? (2010) benedelman.org/news/012110-1.html

Google Still Charging Advertisers for Conversion-Inflation Traffic (2010) benedelman.org/news/010510-1.html

Towards a Bill of Rights for Online Advertisers (2009) benedelman.org/advertisersrights (excerpted in Advertising Week Welcome Guide, excerpted in Huffington Post)

Payment Card Network Rules Prohibit Aggressive Post-Transaction Tactics (2009) benedelman.org/posttransaction/cardnetworks

Deception in Post-Transaction Marketing Offers (2009) benedelman.org/posttransaction (including Senate testimony)

How Google and Its Partners Inflate Measured Conversion Rates and Increase Advertisers' Costs (2009) benedelman.org/news/051309-1.html

In Support of Utah's HB450 (2009) benedelman.org/news/030909-1.html

False and Deceptive Display Ads at Yahoo's Right Media (2009) benedelman.org/rightmedia-deception

Privacy Lapse at Google JotSpot (2008) benedelman.org/google-jot-privacy

Hydra Media's Pop-Up Problem -- Ten Examples (2008) benedelman.org/news/101408-1.html

CPA Advertising Fraud: Forced Clicks and Invisible Windows (2008) benedelman.org/news/100708-1.html

Auditing Spyware Advertising Fraud: Wasted Spending at VistaPrint (2008) benedelman.org/news/093008-1.html

PPC Platform Competition and Google's "May Not Copy" Restriction (2008) benedelman.org/news/062708-1.html

Debunking Zango's "Content Economy" (2008) benedelman.org/news/052808-1.html

Coupons.com and TRUSTe: Lots of Talk, Too Little Action (2008) benedelman.org/news/031808-1.html

Delaying Payment to Deter Online Advertising Fraud (2008) benedelman.org/paymentdelay

Critiquing C-NetMedia's Anti-Spyware Offerings and Advertising Practices (2008) benedelman.org/news/021408-1.html

Sears Exposes Customer Purchase History in Violation of Its Privacy Policy (2008) benedelman.org/news/010408-1.html

The Sears "Community" Installation of ComScore (2008) benedelman.org/news/010108-1.html

A Closer Look at Coupons.com (2007) benedelman.org/news/082807-1.html

Spyware Still Cheating Merchants and Legitimate Affiliates (2007) benedelman.org/news/052107-1.html

How Spyware-Driven Forced Visits Inflate Web Site Traffic Counts (2007) benedelman.org/news/050707-1.html

Advertising Through Spyware -- After Promising To Stop (2007) benedelman.org/news/031407-1.html

Why I Can Never Agree with Adware and Spyware (2007) technology.guardian.co.uk/online/insideit/story/0,,1997629,00.html

Bad Practices Continue at Zango (2006) with Eric Howes benedelman.org/news/112006-1.html

Intermix Revisited (2006) benedelman.org/news/110806-1.html

Current Ask Toolbar Practices (2006) benedelman.org/spyware/ask-toolbars

False and Deceptive Pay-Per-Click Ads (2006) benedelman.org/ppc-scams

Cookies Detected by Anti-Spyware Programs: The Current Status (2006) www.vinnylingham.com/specialreports/cookiedetections

How Vonage Funds Spyware (2006) benedelman.org/news/071806-1.html

Spyware Showing Unrequested Sexually-Explicit Images (2006) benedelman.org/news/062206-1.html

Banner Farms in the Crosshairs (2006) benedelman.org/news/061206-1.html

The Safety of Internet Search Engines (2006) siteadvisor.com/studies/search safety may2006 with Hannah Rosenbaum

New York v. Direct Revenue, LLC - Documents and Analysis (2006) benedelman.org/spyware/nyag-dr

The Spyware - Click-Fraud Connection - and Yahoo's Role Revisited (2006) benedelman.org/news/040406-1.html

Advertisers Funding Direct Revenue (2006) benedelman.org/spyware/images/dr-mar06

Critiquing ITSA's Pro-Adware Policy (2006) benedelman.org/news/033106-2.html

Advertisers Funding 180 solutions (2006) benedelman.org/spyware/images/180-jan06

Nonconsensual 180 Installations Continue (2006) benedelman.org/news/022006-1.html

Pushing Spyware through Search (2006) benedelman.org/news/012606-1.html

Affiliate Hall of Shame (2006) benedelman.org/news/011606-1.html

180solutions's Misleading Installation Methods - Dollidol.com (2006) benedelman.org/spyware/installations/dollidol-180

Scanning for Solutions (2005) publications.mediapost.com/index.cfm?fuseaction=Articles.san&s=37284

What Claria Doesn't Disclose (Any More) (2005) benedelman.org/news/111505-1.html

Claria Shows Ads Through Exploit-Delivered Popups (2005) benedelman.org/news/101805-1.html

Video: New.net Installed through Security Holes (2005) benedelman.org/news/100505-1.html

How Affiliate Programs Fund Spyware (2005) benedelman.org/news/091405-1.html

How Expedia Funds Spyware (2005) benedelman.org/news/090705-1.html

How Yahoo Funds Spyware (2005) benedelman.org/news/083105-1.html

What Passes for "Consent" at 180 solutions (2005) benedelman.org/news/062805-1.html

Google's Role: Syndicated Ads Shown Through Ill-Gotten Third-Party Toolbars (2005) benedelman.org/news/060605-1.html

Ask Jeeves Toolbar Installs via Banner Ads at Kids Sites (2005) benedelman.org/spyware/installations/askjeeves-banner

Hotbar Installs via Banner Ads at Kids Sites (2005) benedelman.org/spyware/installations/kidzpage-hotbar

The 180 Turnaround That Wasn't (2005) adbumb.com/adbumb159.html

The PacerD Installation Bundle (2005) benedelman.org/spyware/installations/pacerd

Claria's Misleading Installation Methods - Ezone.com (2005) benedelman.org/spyware/installations/ezone-claria

Claria's Misleading Installation Methods - Dope Wars (2005) benedelman.org/spyware/installations/dopewars-claria

180solutions's Misleading Installation Methods - Ezone.com (2005) benedelman.org/spyware/installations/ezone-180

3D Desktop's Misleading Installation Methods (2005) benedelman.org/spyware/installations/3d-screensaver

Comparison of Unwanted Software Installed by P2P Programs (2005) benedelman.org/spyware/p2p

Advertisers Supporting eXact Advertising (2005) benedelman.org/spyware/exact-advertisers

How Google's Blogspot Helps Spread Unwanted Software (2005) benedelman.org/news/022205-1.html

How VeriSign Could Stop Drive-By Downloads (2005) benedelman.org/news/020305-1.html

Intermediaries' Role in the Spyware Mess (2005) benedelman.org/news/052305-1.html

Media Files that Spread Spyware (2005) benedelman.org/news/010205-1.html

Video: Ebates Installed through Security Holes (2004) benedelman.org/news/121504-1.html

Direct Revenue Deletes Competitors from Users' Disks (2004) benedelman.org/news/120704-1.html

Who Profits from Security Holes? (2004) benedelman.org/news/111804-1.html

Gator's EULA Gone Bad (2004) benedelman.org/news/112904-1.html

Grokster and Claria Take Licenses to New Lows, and Congress Lets Them Do It (2004) benedelman.org/news/100904-1.html

California's Toothless Spyware Law (2004) benedelman.org/news/092904-1.html

The Effect of 180 solutions on Affiliate Commissions and Merchants (2004) benedelman.org/spyware/180-affiliates

WhenU Spams Google, Breaks Google "No Cloaking" Rules (2004) benedelman.org/spyware/whenu-spam

WhenU Copies 26+ Articles from 20+ News Sites (2004) benedelman.org/spyware/whenu-copy

Advertisers Using WhenU (2004) benedelman.org/spyware/whenu-advertisers

WhenU Security Hole Allows Execution of Arbitrary Software (2004) benedelman.org/spyware/whenu-security

WhenU Violates Own Privacy Policy (2004) benedelman.org/spyware/whenu-privacy

Methods and Effects of Spyware (FTC Comments) (2004) benedelman.org/spyware/ftc-031904.pdf

A Close Reading of Utah's Spyware Control Act (2004) benedelman.org/spyware/utah-mar04

Blocked Sites will Return, but with Limited Access (2003) South China Morning Post (op-ed)

Web Sites Sharing IP Addresses: Prevalence and Significance (2003) cyber.law.harvard.edu/people/edelman/ip-sharing

Documentation of Gator Advertisements and Targeting (2003) cyber.law.harvard.edu/people/edelman/ads/gator

Empirical Analysis of Google SafeSearch (2003) cyber.law.harvard.edu/people/edelman/google-safesearch

Large-Scale Registration of Domains with Typographical Errors (2003) cyber.law.harvard.edu/people/edelman/typodomains

Technical Responses to Unilateral Internet Authority: The Deployment of VeriSign "Site Finder" and ISP Response (2003) with Jonathan Zittrain cyber.law.harvard.edu/tlds/sitefinder

Compliance with UDRP Decisions: A Case Study of Joker.com (2003) cyber.law.harvard.edu/people/edelman/udrp-compliance

Domain Name Typosquatter Still Generating Millions (2003) circleid.com/article/101_0_1_0_C

Localized Google Search Result Exclusions (2002-2003) with Jonathan Zittrain cyber.law.harvard.edu/filtering/google

Defensive Registrations: Why They're Still Needed, and How to Make Them Earn Their Keep (2002) Verisign Digital Brand Management Digital Branding Bulletin, www.verisign.com/services/cdns/news/columnist_200212.html

Documentation of Internet Filtering in Saudi Arabia (2002) with Jonathan Zittrain cyber.law.harvard.edu/filtering/saudiarabia

Localized Google Search Result Exclusions (2002) wth Jonathan Zittrain cyber.law.harvard.edu/filtering/google

Analysis of Domain Reregistrations Used for Distribution of Sexually-Explicit Content (2002) cyber.law.harvard.edu/people/edelman/renewals

Large-Scale Intentional Invalid WHOIS Data (2002) cyber.law.harvard.edu/people/edelman/invalid-whois

.NAME Registrations Not Conforming to .NAME Registration Restrictions (2002) cyber.law.harvard.edu/people/edelman/name-restrictions

Alternative Perspectives on Registrar Market Share (2002) cyber.law.harvard.edu/people/edelman/registrar-choice

DNS as a Search Engine: A Quantitative Evaluation (2002) cyber.law.harvard.edu/people/edelman/dns-as-search

Disputed Registrations in .BIZ (2002) cyber.law.harvard.edu/people/edelman/biz-sunrise

TLD Registration Enforcement: A Call for Automation (2002) circleid.com/article/66_0_1_0_C circleid.com/article/72_0_1_0_C

Invalid WHOIS Data: Who Is Responsible? (2002) circleid.com/article/79_0_1_0_C

iCravetv.biz/Entervision Retransmits CNN, Cartoon Network, PAX TV, California NBC Affiliate (2002) cyber.law.harvard.edu/people/edelman/icrave

Analysis of Registrations in Alternative Root TLDs (2001) cyber.law.harvard.edu/people/edelman/dotbiz and /people/edelman/dotweb

Documentation of Privacy and Security Shortcomings at Buy.com (2000) cyber.law.harvard.edu/people/edelman/buy-privacy.html

Understanding and Critiquing ICANN's Policy Agenda (2000) cyber.law.harvard.edu/icann/pressingissues2000/briefingbook

Software Environments for Online Deliberative Discourse (1999-2000) cyber.law.harvard.edu/projects/deliberation

Executive Summaries of Formative ICANN Documents (1999) cyber.law.harvard.edu/pressbriefings/icann/briefingbook/executivesummaries.html

ICANN and the Public Interest: Pressing Issues (1999) cyber.law.harvard.edu/icann/workshops/la/briefingbook

Using Trumpet Winsock on Netcom Netcruiser Accounts (1995) cyber.law.harvard.edu/people/edelman/trumpet.html

Teaching Cases and Notes

Airbnb (A) and (B) (HBS Case 912-019, -020) (and TN) (2011) with Michael Luca

Attack of the Clones: Birchbox Defends Against Copycat Competitors (HBS Case 912-010) (2011) with Peter Coles

The Online Economy: Strategy and Entrepreneurship - Course Architecture Note (HBS Note 911-069) (2011) with Peter Coles

Mobilizing Online Businesses (HBS Module Note 911-048) (2011) with Peter Coles

Online Marketing at Big Skinny (HBS Case 911-033) (and TN) (2011) with Scott Kominers

The iPhone at IVK (TN) (HBS Teaching Note 911-414) (2010)

Akamai, Inc. (HBS Case 804-158) (2010) with Thomas Eisenmann and Eric Van den Steen

Google Inc. and Google Inc. (Abridged) (HBS Case 910-036 and 910-032) (2010) (and TN) with Thomas Eisenmann

Personal Rapid Transport at Vectus, Inc. (HBS Case 910-010) (2010) (and TN)

eBay Partner Network (A), (B), and (C) (HBS Case 910-008, -009, and -012) (2009) (and TN) with Ian Larkin

Symbian, Google & Apple in the Mobile Space (A) and (B) (HBS Case 909-055, -056) (2009) with F. Suarez & A. Srinivasan

Distribution at American Airlines (A) and (B) (HBS Case 909-035 and -036) (and TN) (2009)

Windows Vista (HBS Case 909-038) (2009)

Case 1:05-cv-08136-DC Document 1010-1 Filed 04/03/12 Page 44 of 83

Online Restaurant Promotions (HBS Case 909-034) (and TN) (2009)

Ad Classification at Right Media (HBS Case 909-032) (and TN) (2009)

Consumer Payment Systems - United States (HBS Case 909-006) (2009) (and TN) with Andrei Hagiu

Consumer Payment Systems - Japan (HBS Case 909-007) (2009) (and TN) with Andrei Hagiu

The Ladders (HBS Case 908-061) (2008) (and TN) with Peter Coles, Brian Hall, and Nicole Bennett

Opening Dot EU (A) and (B) (HBS Case 908-052 and -053) (2008)

Microsoft adCenter (HBS Case 908-049) (and TN) (2008) with Peter Coles

Programming Experience

Microsoft Visual Basic (15+ years experience), VB.NET Mathworks MatLab Stata SPlus / R Python PHP

Awards

Emerald Citations of Excellence Award (2011)

ECCH Award for Outstanding Contribution to the Case Method – Strategy and General Management (2011)

Best Paper Award, Honorable Mention – The 11th International Conference on Electronic Commerce (2009)

Harvard University Graduate Economics Fellowship (2003-2006)

John M. Olin Fellowship in Law and Economics (2003-2004, 2004-2005)

Hoopes Prize for Undergraduate Research (2002)

Seymour and Ruth Harris Prize for Best Honors Thesis in Economics (2002)

John Harvard Scholarship, Harvard College (1998-1999, 1999-2000, 2000-2001)

Rank I Honors, Harvard College (1998-1999, 1999-2000, 2000-2001)

Phi Beta Kappa, Harvard College (2001)

Undergraduate Honors Research Scholarship, Department of Economics, Harvard College (2001)

Detur Prize, Harvard College (1999)

Congressional and Expert Testimony

US Senate, Commerce Committee (2009) (statement for the record)

US House of Representatives, Committee on the Judiciary (2008) (invited / hearing cancelled)

US Senate, Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation (2008)

Federal Trade Commission Public Hearing on Effectiveness of CAN-SPAM (2005)

District Court, Third Judicial District of Utah (2004)

US Federal Court, Eastern District of Michigan (2003)

US House of Representatives, Committee on the Judiciary (2003)

US Federal Court, Eastern District of Pennsylvania (2002)

US Federal Court, Western District of Pennsylvania (2000)

Academic Service

Associate Editor: Journal of Economic Perspectives (2008-2012)

Referee: American Economic Review, Quarterly Journal of Economics, Journal of Applied Economics, RAND Journal of Economics, Management Science, Journal of Economics & Management Strategy, Sponsored Search Workshop, Workshop on the Economics of Information Security, Workshop on the Economics of Securing the Information Infrastructure, Manufacturing & Services Operations Management, The International Conference on Electronic Commerce (2009), International Review of Law and Economics, Journal of Industrial Economics, Operations Research, Berkeley Electronic Press – Policy & Internet, Review of Economic Studies, Economics Letters, Management Science, Review of Industrial Organization, Telecommunications Policy, Emerald Program

Program committee: Workshop on the Economics of Securing the Information Infrastructure (2006), Sponsored Search Workshop (2007), WWW2008, Fourth Workshop on Ad Auctions (2008), The First Conference on Auctions, Market Mechanisms and Their Applications (2009), ACM Conference on Electronic Commerce (2010), Workshop on the Economics of Information Security (2010), Workshop on the Economics of Information Security (2011), Seventh Workshop on Ad Auctions (2011), The Second Conference on Auctions, Market Mechanisms and Their Applications (2011), WWW2012

Co-organizer: Sixth Workshop on Ad Auctions (2010)

Non-resident tutor / senior common room member: Cabot House (2004-2012)

EXHIBIT B

Benjamin Edelman – Prior Testimony at Trial or Deposition

Proceeding	Court	Reference	Context	Year	On behalf of
State of South Carolina v.	South Carolina	08-CP-40-	Deposition	2008	Plaintiff
Casale Media, Inc., et al.	Court of Common	0729			
	Pleas, Richland				
	County				
UMG Recordings, Inc., et al. v.	U.S. District Court,	No. CV 07-	Deposition	2009	Plaintiff
Veoh Networks, Inc., et al.	Central District of	5744 AHM			
	California	(AJWx)			
Netscape Communications	U.S. District Court,	No. 1:09-	Deposition	2009	Plaintiff
Corp. v. Valueclick, Inc., et al.,	Eastern District of	cv-225-TSE-			
	Virginia	IDD			
Arista Records, et al., v. Myxer,	U.S. District Court,	No. CV 08-	Deposition	2009	Plaintiff
Inc., et al.	Central District of	03935 GAF			
	California	(JCx)			
Stephanie Lens v. Universal	United States	No. C 07-	Deposition	2010	Defendant
Music Corp., et al.	District Court,	03783 JF			
	Northern District	(PVT)			
	of California				

EXHIBIT C

Exhibit C to Edelman Report

- 1. The Fourth Amended Class Action Complaint
- 2. Google Objections and Responses to Plaintiffs' First Requests for Admissions
- 3. Plaintiffs' Brief in Support of Their Motion for Class Certification
- 4. Zack Decl. and Exhibits in support of motion for class certification
- 5. Google's Brief in Opposition to Class Certification
- 6. Declarations of Daniel Clancy, dated February 11, 2010, and February 7, 2012
- 7. Plaintiffs' brief in opposition to Google's motion to dismiss the Authors Guild
- 8. Cooperative Agreement between Google and the University of Michigan (from the University of Michigan website)
- 9. The Complaint and Plaintiffs' brief in support of motion for partial judgment on the pleadings in *Authors Guild, et al. v. Hathitrust*, et al., 11 Civ. 6351 (HB)(S.D.N.Y.)
- 10. Defendant Google Inc.'s Supplemental Narrative Responses and Objections to Plaintiffs Second Request for Production of Documents and Things Public Redacted Version
- 11. The books.google.com website
- 12. The materials cited in my report

EXHIBIT 3

UNITED	STATES	DISTRICT	COURT
SOUTHE	RN DIST	RICT OF I	NEW YORK

The Authors Guild, Inc., Associational Plaintiff, Betty Miles, Joseph Goulden, and Jim Bouton, individually and on behalf of all others similarly situated,

Plaintiffs,

Case No. 05 CV 8136-DC

ECF Case

v.	
Google Inc.,	
Defendant.	

REPORT OF PROFESSOR DANIEL GERVAIS

A. INTRODUCTION AND BACKGROUND

- 1. I have been retained by Plaintiffs as an expert on issues of intellectual property, and collective licensing of intellectual property.
- 2. I am FedEx Research Professor of Law at Vanderbilt University Law School and Director of the Vanderbilt Intellectual Property Program.
- 3. I am an expert in the field of intellectual property law. I have taught intellectual property law at various institutions in the U.S., Europe, and Canada. I have edited or contributed to 33 books related to intellectual property; and have written publications on intellectual property law for journals around the world, including the *Journal of the Copyright Society of the USA* (my article won the Charles B Seton Award in 2002-03), *Columbia Journal of Law & the Arts*, *Fordham Law Review, Cardozo Arts & Entertainment Law Journal, European Intellectual Property Review, American Journal of International Law, Chicago-Kent Law Review, Vanderbilt Journal of Technology and Entertainment Law and the Journal of Intellectual Property Law.* I have been cited in a decision by the Supreme Court of the United States (Golan v. Holder, 2011),

and in decisions by many other courts. A recent article was republished in *Intellectual Property*Law Review (2011) as one of the best intellectual property articles of 2010.

- 4. One of my special interests is in "collective management" of copyright, meaning how aggregations of individual copyrights are legally protected, licensed, and marketed. I authored the first chapter of a 2010 book I edited on this subject, entitled "Collective Management of Copyright: Theory and Practice in the Digital Age."
- 5. In January 2011, I gave the keynote talk at an event on collective management of copyright organized by the Kernochan Center for Law, Media and the Arts at Columbia Law School. An updated version of my presentation was published under the title "The Landscape of Collective Management."
- 6. Prior to my teaching career, I served as Head of the Copyright Projects Section at the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO). In that capacity, I was asked to help establish new, or improve the functioning of existing, Collective Management Organizations (CMOs) in various countries around the world.
- 7. I also served as Deputy Secretary General of the International Confederation of Societies of Authors and Composers, the largest association of copyright collectives in the world; and as Vice-President of Copyright Clearance Center, Inc., based in Danvers, MA, during which time I was also Deputy Chair of the International Federation of Reprographic Rights Organizations (IFRRO), a worldwide association of CMOs, specializing in reprography (photocopying and digital reproduction of printed content). I have spoken at over 130 academic, professional and other conferences and events, discussing various issues related to intellectual property, including copyright law of the United States, international copyright law and the TRIPS Agreement.

¹ 24:4 COLUM-VLA J. L & ARTS 423-449 (2011).

- 8. I also serve as Editor-in-Chief of the *Journal of World Intellectual Property*, published jointly by John Wiley & Sons (New York) and Blackwell Publishing (Oxford, UK).
- 9. My complete curriculum vitae is attached here to as Exhibit A. The facts and data I considered in forming my opinion are listed on Exhibit B. I have not testified as an expert at trial or by deposition in the last four years. I am being compensated for my time at the rate of \$400 per hour.

B. MY OPINION

- 10. It is my understanding that Google has engaged in the digital copying of millions of books in libraries, the distribution of digital copies of these books to libraries, and display of "snippets" from these books in search results. I have been asked my opinion (a) whether collective licensing markets will continue to develop for the digital uses of books and (b) whether unrestricted and widespread conduct of the type engaged in by Google will harm the development of such markets. As I discuss in greater detail below, in my opinion, the answer to each of these questions is the affirmative.
- 11. I believe that, if Google's uses are determined not to be fair uses, the market would intervene and one or more CMOs (with proper authorizations from right holders) would license Google (and potentially others) to scan, distribute and display copyrighted works. In fact, as discussed further below, the type of copyrighted content that Copyright Clearance Center, Inc. presently licenses is essentially printed content, much of the same nature as the material scanned by Google. The rights involved are also essentially the same. In other words, this type of licensing is already a reality.
- 12. Collective management is already indispensable for many categories of content creators and for many types of copyright uses, including online uses. The value of copyright

rights to authors and other copyright owners is often monetized not in individual transactions (authorizing the use of one or more specific works) but in licensing their rights in aggregated form, as part of a "repertory" of works or rights. This allows markets for those repertoires of works and rights to form and to operate, allowing access to and uses of copyrighted material while compensating creators for their work. Collective licensing markets have often developed in response to new technologies and uses and will continue to develop for digital uses of books unless widespread copying of entire books is permitted as a fair use, thus discouraging the development of such collective licenses.

- 13. Making books and other copyrighted works available online is desirable both for authors and readers. Technologically, it may be inevitable. It is likely to become a major form of access to content. It may also facilitate access by people with disabilities.
- 14. Allowing the market, or Congress, to develop a collective licensing system for the types of uses that Google has been making would not prevent these uses. Instead, it would compensate those who created and published the content and whose ability to earn a living often depends on being able to monetize online uses. The actual scope of the uses could be taken into account in determining appropriate rates. Collective management solutions can be applied to manage this type of licensing transaction, as the existence of successful similar collective systems demonstrates.
- 15. An argument that collective management is not possible or desirable in this case because there are many different types of books is negated by the existence of successful licensing systems for more than two centuries that have combined works of a similar form but with different content into repertoires. Collective Management Organizations license old and new works. Today, existing collective rights music organizations license everything from Philip

Glass to the latest hip-hop hit. CMOs typically pay authors and other right holders based on actual usage.

- 16. Collective licensing was the thrust of the proposed settlement in this case. The proposed Book Rights Registry was a form of collective management with a repertory license allowing Google to use millions of titles. The Registry would have maintained a database of rights information, received on behalf of the rightsholders the agreed payments from Google, and distributed those payments to rightsholders who had registered their works with the Registry.
- 17. It is my opinion that a similar type of collective management system, most likely one requiring that rightsholders opt their books in to participate in collective management, would develop here if some or all of Google's uses are found not to be fair. Further, it is my opinion that, if conduct such as Google's is permitted and becomes widespread, this will harm or impede the development of such a collective management model.

C. BASES FOR THE OPINION

- (1) The Emergence and Basic Operations of Copyright Management Organizations
- 18. Collective management reportedly emerged around 1777 in France, when authors of theatrical plays formed an association to license their plays.² In the United States, collective

² In 1838, Honoré de Balzac and Victor Hugo established the Society of French Writers, (known in French as Société des gens de lettres. *See* online: http://www.sgdl.org/> (last visited: March 28, 2012), which was mandated with the collection of royalties from print publishers. A net of authors' societies, shaped by the cultural environment of each country, slowly spread throughout the world. *Id.* at 10. Around the same time, the Universal Theatrical Society was established.

See www.answers.com/topic/firmin-g-mier (last visited: March 28, 2012).

Both of these initiatives led to the founding congress in 1926 of the International Confederation of Societies of Authors (CISAC). *See* www.cisac.org (last visited: March 28, 2012).

The founding members identified the need to establish both uniform principles and methods in each country for the collection of royalties and the protection of works, and to ensure that copyright was protected throughout the world. (By "world", I am referring only to the Western World. This is inclusive of the Anglo-Saxon and *droit d'auteur* traditions of copyright.)

Today, CISAC has 232 members in 121 countries. See

http://www.cisac.org/CisacPortal/initConsultDoc.do?idDoc=22994 (last visited: March 28, 2012).

management developed as technology and markets made possible the widespread and dispersed infringement of copyrights. Broadcasters were considered "pirates," until their use of music was licensed by performing rights organizations (PROs). ASCAP, BMI and SESAC are the three PROs identified as such in 17 U.S.C. §101. The first PRO, the American Society of Composers and Publishers (ASCAP), was formed in 1914.

19. Collective management provides a number of advantages in licensing uses of copyrights. CMOs are a single-source for the licensing of specific uses, thereby eliminating the need for individually negotiated licenses from each copyright owner. By reducing the transaction costs associated with enforcing, on the one hand, and licensing, on the other, they help convert widespread infringement into markets. This benefits authors and users.

(2) Collective Management in the Copyright Act

- 20. The Copyright Act regulates CMOs in the United States in a variety of ways. For example, PROs are named in section 101. Section 115 establishes a compulsory license for making and distributing phonorecords. When certain uses are determined by Congress to be desirable but subject to a payment to authors, Congress may establish a compulsory license. Such a system is now in place to set rates for non-interactive transmissions of sound recordings.³
- 21. A brief review of the legislative history might be helpful to illuminate the issue at hand.
- 22. The initial focus of legislative action was the collective management of music. In the 1897 Act, Congress prohibited unauthorized public performances generally.⁴ However, in the Copyright Act of 1909, Congress limited the prohibition to those done "for profit."⁵

For 2010, CISAC members reported collections of \$9.9 billion. See id.

³ Section 114 and chapter 8 of Title 17 of the United States Code.

⁴ *Id*.

⁵ *Id*.

23. Not surprisingly, within a few years of the 1909 Act's enactment, the need to define "for profit" emerged.⁶ In *Herbert*, the Supreme Court, in the words of Justice Holmes, explained that the notion should be defined fairly broadly:

The defendants' performances are ... part of a total for which the public pays, and the fact that the price of the whole is attributed to a particular item which those present are expected to order, is not important. It is true that the music is not the sole object, but neither is the food, which probably could be got cheaper elsewhere. The object is a repast in surroundings that to people having limited powers of conversation or disliking the rival noise give a luxurious pleasure not to be had from eating a silent meal. If music did not pay it would be given up. If it pays it pays out of the public's pocket. Whether it pays or not the purpose of employing it is profit and that is enough.⁷

- 24. The Court thus established the need for the public performance licenses that ASCAP and now the other PROs provide.⁸ This is a good example of infringement preceding the establishment of a working collective licensing system.
- 25. When Congress enacted the Copyright Act of 1976,⁹ it did away with the "for profit" language of the 1909 Act. However, Congress also expressly exempted from copyright liability "the public reception of [a transmission embodying a performance of a work] on a single receiving apparatus" where no separate charge was made to see or hear the transmission.¹⁰
- 26. In an effort to adapt the statute to technological change, in the Digital Performance Right in Sound Recordings Act of 1995, Congress enacted a limited digital public

⁶ See Herbert v. Shanley Co., 242 U.S. 591 (1917) [Herbert]; John Church Co. v. Hilliard Hotel Co., 221 F. 229 (2nd Cir. 1915). The named plaintiff in Herbert v. Shanley Co., Victor Herbert, was a founding member of ASCAP, and brought the case as a test case to establish a broader scope for the right of public performance.

⁷ See Herbert, id.

⁸ Exempted from license fees in the 1909 Act were certain charitable performances and for jukeboxes.

⁹ Act of October 19, 1976, Pub. L. No. 553, 94th Cong., 1st Sess., 90 Stat. 2586, codified as amended at 15 U.S.C. §§ 1-1332 (2005).

¹⁰ *Id.* at § 110(1), (2), (3), (4), (6), (8), (9), codified as amended 17 U.S.C. § 110(1), (2), (3), (4), (6), (8), (9) (2005).

performance right for sound recordings, contained in 17 U.S.C.§114. ¹¹ Congress then provided a compulsory license for non-interactive transmissions - that do not enable a member of the public to receive, on request, a transmission of a particular sound recording or a program specially created for the recipient. ¹² The Act also tasked the U.S. Copyright Office to designate a CMO to administer the license, which it did, naming SoundExchange, Inc. ¹³

ASCAP and BMI. Instead, Congress opted for a more specialized and modern form of regulation of collective management. Under this new regulatory model, the Act gave the Library of Congress (of which the Copyright Office forms part) the authority to set rates and licensing conditions. The Act also set a distribution key according to which SoundExchange distributes 50% of the revenues to the sound recording copyright owners, 45% to the featured artists, and 5% to an independent administrator to distribute to non-featured artists and vocalists. Licensing rates are set by Copyright Royalty Judges (CRJs)¹⁴ appointed by the Librarian of Congress for six-year terms.

(3) The Copyright Clearance Center

28. A different, voluntary model emerged when Copyright Clearance Center, Inc. ("CCC") was formed in 1978 as a New York not-for-profit corporation. Publishers and authors register their works with the CCC and set the fee for use of their works in CCC's several per-use license services. CCC also offers annual repertory licenses in both the business and academic

¹¹ 104 Pub. L. No. 39, 109 Stat. 336 (1995).

¹² 17 U.S.C. §114(d)(2), (f)(2) (2009); *see also* Bonneville Int'l Corp. v. Peters, 347 F.3d 485, (3d Cir. 2003) (affirming Copyright Office's decision to require a compulsory license for simultaneous transmission of a radio station's broadcast through the Internet).

¹³ See 17 U.S.C. § 114(g)(2); and Notice of Designation As Collective Under Statutory License filed with the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office in accordance with Copyright Office regulation 270.5(c), 37 C.F.R. § 270.5(c).

¹⁴ 17 U.S.C. §§ 801-805 (2009).

markets. For the year ended June 30, 2011, CCC reported revenues in excess of \$238 million and payments to right holders in excess of \$171 million. 15 According to its website, CCC licenses business users, under one or more of its repertory or per-use licenses, the right to photocopy an article from a newspaper, magazine, book, journal, research report or other published document; e-mail an online article or PDF; post digital content on their corporate Web sites, intranets and extranets; print out Web-based and other digital content onto paper and overhead slides; republish content in a newsletter, book or journal; and scan printed content into digital form when an electronic version is not readily available. ¹⁶ For academic institutions, again under one or more of its repertory or per-use services, it licenses the right to photocopy material from books, newspapers, journals and other publications for use in coursepacks and classroom handouts; use and share information in library reserves, interlibrary loan and document delivery services; post and share content electronically in e-reserves, course management systems, e-coursepacks and other e-learning environments; distribute content via email or post it to their intranets, Internet and extranet sites; and republish an article, book excerpt or other content in their own books, journals, newsletters and other materials.¹⁷

(4) Other Collective Management Organizations

29. Today, CMOs in the United States license: (a) musical works (primarily the three PROs and Harry Fox Agency (HFA) which licenses mostly the reproduction of musical works); (b) sound recordings and the artists' performances they contain (Sound Exchange); and (c) photocopying and digital reprography (Copyright Clearance Center, Inc. or CCC), to name the

¹⁵ The difference between the two numbers includes but is not all a service charge. Due to the time period required to process usage data, the 2011 distributions were mostly of 2010 collections which were significantly lower than 2011 collections. *See* http://annualreport.copyright.com/management-summary-financial-data.

¹⁶ See www.copyright.com.

¹⁷ See id.

most well-known organizations. In addition, a form of collective management is used to collect and distribute residuals to certain actors, directors and screenwriters by the audiovisual guilds.

authorization is required to operate as a CMO, as was the case for SoundExchange¹⁸), a CMO needs the authority to license a repertory of works, performances or recordings and/or to collect a license fee. The authority may be granted by law, as when a compulsory or statutory license is in place¹⁹, or by contracts with individual right holders or other CMOs. With that authority, a CMO can license and/or collect fees on the basis of rates (also known as "tariffs"). Those rates may be set by a governmental authority such as the Legislative Branch as in section 115 of the Copyright Act or in section 114 by the Copyright Royalty Judges for SoundExchange, or by the Judiciary Branch, such as the federal judges operating as rate courts under the ASCAP and BMI consent decrees.²⁰ At other times, the rates are set by rightholders, as is the case with CCC.²¹

¹⁸ See infra note 13.

¹⁹ According to the US Copyright Office, there are eight compulsory and statutory licenses in the Copyright Act (the Copyright Office also notes that the "terms 'compulsory' and 'statutory' are interchangeable"):

Section 111 - Statutory License for Secondary Transmissions by Cable Systems

Section 112 - Statutory License for Making Ephemeral Recordings

Section 114 - Statutory License for the public performance of Sound Recordings by Means of a Digital Audio Transmission

Section 115 - Compulsory License for Making and Distributing Phonorecords

Section 118 - Compulsory License for the use of Certain Works in Connection with Non-Commercial Broadcasting

Section 119 - Statutory License for Secondary Transmissions for Satellite Carriers

Section 122 - Statutory License for Secondary Transmissions by Satellite Carriers for Local Retransmissions

Section 1003 - Statutory Obligation for Distribution of Digital Audio Recording Devices and Media (Chapter 10).

See www.copyright.gov/licensing/

²⁰ See, e.g., United States v. Am. Soc'y of Composers, Authors and Publishers, No. 41-1395, 2001 WL 1589999, (S.D.N.Y. June 11, 2001); and Michael A. Einhorn, *Intellectual Property and Antitrust: Music Performing Rights in Broadcasting*, 24 COLUM.-VLA J.L. & ARTS 349, 361 (2001).

²¹ Sometimes the price is set by a governmental authority without the need to seek a voluntary agreement first.

- 31. Having thus obtained the authority to license and/or collect fees, the CMO will normally proceed to sign agreements with users that provide for the collection of license fees and usage data. For example, radio stations (broadcasters) provide logs (often in digital form) of the recordings they used to the PROs in an agreed format. While a radio station may use computer logs to report the recordings used, for other types of users (hotels, bars, restaurants), it is difficult to require 100% reporting. Sometimes statistical surveys are used instead. For example, a number of (representative) users may be surveyed for a specific period of time, and the data thus gathered will then be extrapolated to the class of users concerned using statistical regressions and other similar models.
- 32. The CMO will process such data and apply them to distribute the funds to copyright holders.²² Identification data (metadata) is generally used to match usage data reported by users or generated by the CMO to specific works, recordings or performances and the right holders therein.
 - (5) Collective management is a major part of copyright in practice
- 33. As I see it, in practice there are six ways in which copyrights are currently treated in the United States:
 - (A) Full individual exercise of rights by the copyright owner
 - (B) Voluntary collective management of rights by the copyright owner
 - (C) Presumption/designation of uses by statute
 - (D) Statutory limitations on damages to the applicable CMO rate
 - (E) Statutory or judicial compulsory licensing

²² Payment to foreign copyright holders is often done through local CMOs in each territory on the basis of a contract usually referred to as a Reciprocal Representation Agreement. Worldwide databases of identification data have been created by CISAC and IFRRO. This allows their members to identify foreign works, performances and recordings licensed to them under those reciprocal representation agreements.

- (F) Exceptions allowing uncompensated uses (such as fair use)
- 34. In a full individual exercise scenario (level A), a user must contact the copyright owner to obtain permission to make uses. Examples would be a book author's contract with a publisher or an author allowing the making of a derivative work, such as a film made based upon a novel. This often entails significant transaction costs (negotiation, etc.).
- 35. Then there are four levels of right at which the author loses the ability to say no to certain uses by others but retains a right to be paid for such uses. Such is the case when an author voluntarily joins a CMO (level B) because CMOs in most cases will not prohibit the use of a work in their repertory.²³
- 36. At level C, a CMO may be designated by governmental authorities to manage a right. This system is applied in the United States under section 114 (SoundExchange is the designated CMO).
- 37. Another option (level D) is to statutorily limit the damages available for certain uses. A number of options under consideration for orphan works resemble this option.²⁴
- 38. The next level is a compulsory license (level E). This may be managed by a private CMO (for example Harry Fox Agency under the section 115 compulsory license). A governmental authority can also be designated for this purpose. The U.S. Copyright Office directly administers royalty fee collections from cable operators for retransmitting television and radio broadcasts (under 17 U.S.C.§ 111), from satellite carriers for retransmitting non-network

²³ Often they simply cannot or should not, as would arguably be the case with ASCAP and BMI under their respective consent decrees.

²⁴ See http://www.copyright.gov/orphan/ (last accessed March 28, 2012). One of the proposals most discussed would limit damages (conditions apply) to a "reasonable compensation" mutually agreed by the owner and the user or, failing that, be decided by a court and the suppression of statutory damages. My point is that if a collective rate was in place, it would likely inform the reasonable compensation determination by a court.

and network signals (17 U.S.C.§ 119), and from importers or manufacturers for distributing digital audio recording products ((17 U.S.C.§ 1003).²⁵

- 39. At level F, a statute takes away from the copyright owner the right to receive remuneration for certain uses. Fair use is such a situation.
- 40. I believe that if Google's uses are not determined to be fair uses, the market, or Congress, will develop a collective licensing system for the types of uses that Google has been making so that Google would not have to negotiate a transactional license for each book or other work it wishes to use. Such an approach would compensate those who created and published the content and whose ability to earn a living often depends on being able to monetize online uses.

(6) Collective management and the digitization of, and mass access to, books

41. Often after a new form of use has emerged, collective management systems are established to license uses that have been found to be desirable but unauthorized. The purpose of collective management is not to put roadblocks in the utilization of works but rather to reconcile the needs of users and authors, to ensure that copyright rights are duly reflected in new forms of use that do not constitute fair uses or are otherwise exempt. Using collective management, users can obtain licenses with limited transaction costs (such as the annual licenses granted by the PROs and by CCC) or at least a single interlocutor. CMOs can also aggregate usage data to protect the privacy of individuals and the confidentiality of institutional and business users.

²⁵ See Circular 75: The Licensing Division of the Copyright Office, available at http://www.copyright.gov/circs/circ75.pdf (last accessed March 28, 2012).

CONCLUSION

42. Allowing practices like Google's as fair use may be expected to thwart the development of collective management systems for the digital uses of books and book excerpts that authors and publishers would otherwise likely develop, join or license others to develop.

Dated: April 2, 2012

Daniel Gervais, Ph. D.

EXHIBIT A

CURRICULUM VITAE

Daniel J. Gervais

PART I – EMPLOYMENT & HONORS

a) CURRENT POSITION

Professor of Law Co-Director, Vanderbilt Intellectual Property Program Vanderbilt University Law School

b) EDUCATION

- Doctorate, University of Nantes (France), 1998
 - magna cum laude ("très honorable")
- Diploma of Advanced International Studies, Geneva (Switzerland), 1989
 - summa cum laude ("très bien")
- LL.M., University of Montreal, 1987
- Computer science studies University of Montreal, 1984-1985
- LL.B. (McGill University/University of Montreal), 1984
- D.E.C. (Science, Jean-de-Brébeuf College, Montreal), 1981

c) PREVIOUS EMPLOYMENT & OTHER ACADEMIC EXPERIENCE

- Acting Dean, Common Law Section, University of Ottawa (Feb-Jul 2006 and Sep-2007-July 2008)
- University Research Chair, Common Law Section, University of Ottawa (2006-2008)
- Vice-Dean, Research, Common Law Section, University of Ottawa (2003-2006)
- Full Professor, Common Law Section, University of Ottawa (2005-2008)
- Associate Professor, Common Law Section, University of Ottawa (2001-2005)
- Vice-President, International, Copyright Clearance Centre, Inc., Massachusetts, USA, 1997-2000
- Consultant, Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), Paris, 1997
- Assistant Secretary General, International Confederation of Societies of Authors and Composers (CISAC), Paris, 1995-1996
- Head of Section, World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO), Geneva, 1992-1995
- Consultant & Legal Officer, General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT/WTO), Geneva, 1990-1991
- Lawyer, Clark, Woods, (Montreal), 1985-1990.

Visits:

- Visiting Lecturer, Washington College of Law, American University, June 2011;
- Visiting Professor, University of Liège (Belgium), March 2010 and 2011;

- Visiting Professor, University of Strasbourg (Centre for International Intellectual Property Studies (CEIPI), France), Nov.-Dec. 2009;
- Visiting Professor, Université de Montpellier, France (Feb. 2007 and Apr. 2008)
- Visiting Professor, University of Haifa (2005)
- 2004 Trilateral Distinguished Scholar-in-Residence, Michigan State University, Detroit College of Law (April-May 2004)
- Visiting Scholar, Stanford Law School, Feb-Apr. 2004
- Visiting Professor, DEA (graduate) program, Faculty of Law, University of Nantes, France (May 2003)
- Visiting Professor, Faculty of Law, Graduate program in intellectual property (DESS), Centre universitaire d'enseignement et de recherché en propriété intellectuelle (CUERPI), Université Pierre Mendès-France (Grenoble II), France
- Visiting Professor, Faculty of Law, University of Puerto Rico (June-July 2002--instruction in Spanish and English)
- Lecturer, Institute for Information Law, Faculty of Law, University of Amsterdam, Postdoctoral Summer Program in International Copyright Law (every year since 2000; last in July 2011)

d) HONORS

- Ontario Research Excellence Award (ex PREA), 2005*
- Charles B. Seton Award, 2003 (see under "Scholarly Articles" below)
- Quebec Bar 1985. Finished first ex aequo out of 600+ candidates—received all available awards, including:
 - o Quebec Bar Award
 - o Quebec Young Bar Award
 - o Paris Bar Prize
- Two Excellence Awards, Faculty of Law, University of Montreal, 1984

e) OTHER RELEVANT

- 1. Editor-in-Chief, Journal of World Intellectual Property, Wiley-Blackwell (2006-)
- 2. Panelist, UDRP, WIPO Arbitration and Mediation Center
- 3. International editor, Journal of Intellectual Property Law & Practice (Oxford Univ. Press) (2005-2008)
- 4. Member, International Association for the Advancement of Teaching and Research in Intellectual Property (ATRIP)
- 5. Member of the Law Society of Upper Canada (Ontario Bar) and of the Bar of Quebec
- 6. Languages: English, French, Spanish. German (functional). One year of Mandarin.

Of the 64 awards in 2005, only one given to a law professor.

f) ACADEMIC CONFERENCES:

- Invited speaker, Copyright in a borderless online environment Symposium, Thoresta, Sweden, October 27-28, 2011
- Invited moderator, Max-Planck Institute Workshop on Economic Partnership Agreements of the EU: A Step Ahead an International IP Law?", Frauenchiemsee, Germany, June 26-28, 2011
- Invited keynote speaker, 39e Colloque Annuel International de l'AFEC, Stretching borders: How far can Canada Go?, Montpellier, France, June 15-17, 2011
- Moderator, Vanderbilt University Law School Program, Beijing, May 21, 2011
- Invited moderator and panelist, 19th Annual Conference on Intellectual Property Law & Policy, Fordham University Law School, New York, April 28-29, 2011
- Invited Chair, Invitation-only Intellectual Property Workshop, Canadian International Council, Ottawa, March 31-April 1, 2011
- Moderator, Patent Unrest, Vanderbilt Law School. February 24, 2011
- Keynote Speaker, Annual Symposium of the Kernochan Center for Law, Media & the Arts, Columbia Law School, New York, January 28, 2011
- Invited speaker, Intellectual Property Institute of Australia (IPRIA), University of Melbourne, Australia, December 13, 2010
- Invited speaker, Trade, Intellectual Property and the Knowledge Assets of Indigenous Peoples: The Developmental Frontier, Victoria University, Wellington, New Zealand, December 8-10, 2010
- Invited speaker, Computer Programs and TRIPS, TRIPS@10 Conference, Columbia University, November 16-18, 2010
- Speaker, International Law Weekend, American Branch of the International Law Association, Fordham Law School, New York, October 22-23, 2010
- Invited speaker, Bits Without Borders conference, Michigan State University, East Lansing, MI, September 25-26, 2010;
- Invited speaker, World Trade Forum, Bern, Switzerland, September 3-4, 2010
- Invited speaker, Copyright @ 300, UC Berkeley School of Law, Berkeley, CA, April 9-10, 2010
- Invited speaker, The Statute of Anne 300 Birthday, Cardozo Law School, New York, March 24-25, 2010
- Invited panelist, Access to Knowledge (A2K) conference, Yale Law School, February 12-13, 2010
- Invited speaker, IUS COMMUNE, Reinventing the Lisbon Agreement, Maastricht University, The Netherlands, November 26, 2009
- Invited speaker, The Lisbon Agreement, CEIPI (Université de Strasbourg, France),
 November 17, 2009
- Invited keynote speaker, Signifiers in Cyberspace: Domain Names and Online Trademarks

- Conference, Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland, Ohio, November 12, 2009
- Invited speaker, Beyond TRIPS: The Current Push for Greater International Enforcement of Intellectual Property, American University (Washington College of Law), November 5, 2009
- Invited speaker, Intellectual Property Developments in China: Global Challenge, Local Voices conference, Drake University, Des Moines, Iowa, October 15-16, 2009
- Invited speaker, University of Hong Kong, June 12-13, 2009
- Invited speaker, Conference on 100th Anniversary of the 1909 Copyright Act, Santa Clara University, April 27, 2009
- Invited panelist, Fordham International Intellectual Property law & Policy Conference, Cambridge, England, April 15-16, 2009
- Invited participant, University of Cambridge-University of Queensland Copyright History Roundtable, Cambridge, England, April 15, 2009
- Commentator, Vanderbilt Roundtable on User-Generated Content, Social Networking & Virtual Worlds, Nashville, November 14, 2008
- Distinguished Finnegan Lecturer, Washington College of Law, Washington, D.C., October 18, 2008
- Invited panelist, International Law Weekend, New York, October 16, 2008
- Invited speaker, IP Speaker Series, Cardozo Law School, September 22, 2008
- Invited lecturer, Intellectual Property Research Institute of Australia (IPRIA), Melbourne, June 3, 2008
- Invited speaker, International Conference on Patent Law, University of New Zealand, Wellington, May 29-30, 2008
- Invited speaker, Law School of National Taiwan University, March 21, 2008
- Invited commentator, EDGE Project Conference on Intellectual Property and Development, Hong Kong, March 17-18, 2008
- Invited speaker, Cardozo Law School Conference on Harmonizing Exceptions and Limitations to Copyright Law, New York, March 30-31, 2008
- Invited panelist, Fordham Conference on International Intellectual Property Law & Policy, New York, March 27-28, 2008
- Rapporteur, International Literary and Artistic Association Biennial Congress (ALAI), Punta del Este, Uruguay, Oct. 31 Nov. 3 2007
- Invited speaker, Vanderbilt University, Nashville, Tennessee, Oct. 16-17, 2007. "Collective Management of Copyright in North America", (conference organized in cooperation with WIPO)
- Invited speaker, University of South Carolina, Columbia, SC, October 12, 2007 "The Future of Copyright Law"
- Invited panellist, Fordham University Conference on International Intellectual Property Law & Policy, New York, April 12-13, 2007
- Invited speaker, Dean's lectures on intellectual property, George Washington University School of Law, Washington D.C., March 13, 2007
- Invited Speaker, UCLA Conference on the WIPO Development Agenda, Los Angeles, March 9-11, 2007
- Invited speaker, International Conference on Impact of TRIPS: Indo-US Experience. NALSAR University of Law, Hyderabad (India), Dec. 15-16, 2006
- Invited speaker, International intellectual property conference, University of Chicago-Kent, October 12-13, 2006
- Speaker, Study days of the International Literary and Artistic Association, Barcelona, June 18-21, 2006

- Invited moderator, Fourteenth Annual Conference on International Intellectual Property Law & Policy, New York, April 20-21 2006
- Invited speaker, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor. Intellectual Property & Development, April 14 2006;
- Invited speaker, Michigan State University College of Law (MSU), East Lansing, The International
- Intellectual Property Regime Complex, April 7-8 2006
- Invited Roundtable participant, Vanderbilt University Law School, Nashville, Tennessee. Private International Law and Intellectual Property Law: Theory and Practice, March 24-25, 2006
- Invited panelist, Federalist Society, Annual Lawyers Convention. Washington, D.C., November 2005
- Panel Chair, Annual meeting of the International Association for the Advancement of Teaching and Research in Intellectual Property (ATRIP), Montréal, July 11-13, 2005
- Invited lecturer, Institute of European Studies, Macau (IEEM), Advanced IP course (25 June-1 July 2005)
- Invited lecturer, Advanced IP conference, Macau, June 27-30, 2005
- Invited speaker, Conference on the Relationship between international and domestic law McGill University, June 15-16, 2005
- Invited speaker, Conference on the Collective Management of Copyright, Oslo, May 19-21, 2005
- Invited keynote speaker, Conference of the Department of Justice on intellectual property and Internet Law, Ottawa, April 21, 2005
- Invited keynote speaker, LSUC Annual Communications Law Conference, Toronto, April 8-9, 2005
- Invited speaker, Law & the Information Society Conference, Fordham University, New York, April 6-7, 2005
- Invited panelist, Fordham International Intellectual Property Law & Policy Conference, New York, March 31-Apirl 1, 2005
- Invited Speaker, Shanghai 2004: Intellectual Property Rights and WTO Compliance. University of East China, Shanghai, China, Nov. 24, 2004
- Invited speaker, "The Internet: A Global Conversation" Conference, University of Ottawa, Oct. 1-2, 2004
- Invited lecturer, Office for Harmonization in the Internal Market (Trade Marks and Designs). Alicante (Spain), July 2004
- Organizer and speaker, Rethinking Copyright Conference, University of Ottawa, May 20-21, 2004
- Invited panelist, American Intellectual Property Lawyers Association (AIPLA), Dallas TX, May 13-14, 2004
- Invited speaker, 2004 Computers Freedom & Privacy Conference, Berkeley, California Apr. 20-23, 2004
- Invited speaker, Intellectual Property, Sustainable Development & Endangered Species Conference. Detroit College of Law, Michigan State University, March 26-27, 2004
- Invited Speaker, Securing Privacy in the Internet Age Symposium, Stanford Law School, March 13-14, 2004
- Invited keynote speaker, "US Copyright Office Comes to California" Conference, Hastings College of Law, San Francisco, CA, March 3, 2004
- Invited speaker, Global Arbitration Forum, Geneva, Switzerland, Dec. 4-5, 2003;

- Invited Panel Chair and speaker, "Copyright and the Music Industry: Digital Dilemmas", Institute for Information Law, Amsterdam, July 4-5, 2003. Topic: "Collective Rights Management & the Future of Copyright";
- Conference Fellow, "International Public Goods and Transfer of Technology under a Globalized Intellectual Property Regime" Conference, Duke Law School, Raleigh, NC, USA, Apr. 4-6, 2003
- Invited speaker, Roundtable on questions arising out of the intersections of technology and questions of social justice, University of Ottawa, March 28, 2003. Topic: "Democracy, Technology and Social Justice" (available at commonlaw.uottawa.ca);
- Invited speaker, Conference of Copyright Law Association of Japan (CLAJ), Tokyo, Dec. 7, 2002. Topic: "Transactional Copyright: Licensing Tailored Uses"
- Invited speaker, Facultés universitaires de Saint-Louis, Belgique, May 25-26 2002. Topic : «De l'œuvre à l'auteur »
- Invited speaker. Institutions administratives du droit d'auteur, colloquium organized by the Université de Montréal, Montreal, Oct. 2001. Topic : « La gestion collective au Canada : fragmentation des droits ou gestion fragmentaire »
- Invited speaker, Annual Meeting of the International Literary and Artistic Association (ALAI International), Columbia University, New York, 2001. Topic: "Rights Management Systems"
- Invited lecturer, Swedish School of Economics and the Finnish IPR Institute, Helsinki, Finland, 2000. Topic: "Copyright and Electronic Commerce", lecture presented to graduate students
- Invited speaker, Fordham University Conference on International Intellectual Property, New York, April 2001. Topic "Electronic Commerce and Copyright"
- Invited speaker, Fordham University Conference on International Intellectual Property, New York, April 2000. Topic: "The TRIPS Agreement After Seattle"
- Invited speaker, Ohio State University, Columbus, Ohio, 2000. Topic: "Digital Licensing of Copyright"
- Invited speaker, Fordham University Conference on International Intellectual Property, New York, April 1999. Topic: "Digital Distance Education: Exemption or Licensing?"
- Invited speaker, Fordham University Conference on International Intellectual Property, New York, April 1999. Topic: "An Overview of TRIPS: Historical and Current Issues"

g) PUBLIC LECTURES:

- Invited speaker and session leader, High-level (Ministerial) Forum on Intellectual Property for the Least-Developed Countries, WIPO, Geneva, July 24-25, 2009
- Invited moderator, Copyright Counseling, Management, and Litigation Law Seminar, Seattle, WA, April 26-27, 2009
- Invited speaker, Annual Meeting. Commission on Intellectual Property, International Chamber of Commerce, Cambridge, England, April 17, 2009
- Invited keynote speaker, Asian Copyright Seminar, Tokyo, Japan, February 25-27, 2009
- Invited speaker, International Copyright Institute, Washington DC, Nov. 28, 2006
- Invited speaker, International Trademark Association, Trademarks Administrators Conference, Crystal City, Virginia, September 19-20, 2006
- Invited speaker, General Assembly of the National Association of Publishers (ANEL), Montréal,
 September 14, 2006

- Invited speaker, Federalist Society Annual Lawyers Convention, Washington D.C. November 2005.
- Invited keynote speaker. InSIGHT, Old Mill Inn, Toronto, September 2005. Topic: "Copyright Reform in Canada"
- Invited speaker. Canadian Institute, , Montréal, 5-6 June, 2005;
- Invited speaker, Canadian Bar Association, Montreal, Nov. 9, 2004. Topic: "Recent developments in Canadian copyright law"
- Invited speaker, Peer-to-Peer Luncheon speech, The 45th Circuit, Ottawa Centre for Research and Innovation (OCRI), Oct. 5, 2004. Topic: "Peer-to-Peer File-Sharing"
- Invited speaker, Luncheon conference, ALAI Canada, Toronto, Sept. 13, 2004. Topic: "The Supreme Court decision in SOCAN v. Can. Ass'n of Internet Providers"
- Invited Lecturer, International Copyright Institute, Washington, D.C., May 5, 2004. Topic: "Collective management of copyright"
- Invited speaker, Biannual Canadian Bar Association/Law Society of Upper Canada Communications Law Conference, Ottawa, April 23-24, 2004. Topic: "The Supreme Court decision in CCH v. Law Society of Upper Canada"
- Invited Speaker, Association pour l'avancement des sciences et des techniques de la documentation (ASTED), Annual Meeting, Gatineau, Quebec, Nov. 7, 2003. Topic : "Copyright Exceptions and Librarians"
- Invited Keynote Speaker, International Conference on National Copyright Administrative Institutions, Ottawa, Oct. 8-10, 2003. Topic: "Status Report on Internet Tariffs";
- Invited Panelist, Intellectual Property Institute of Canada (IPIC), Annual Meeting, Halifax, Sept. 19, 2003. Topic: "Technical Protection Measures and Copyright";
- Invited Speaker, North American Workshop on Intellectual Property and Traditional Knowledge, Ottawa, Sept. 7-9, 2003. Topic: Traditional Knowledge and Intellectual Property: The Issues (overview)";
- Invited speaker, Association des juristes d'expression française de l'Ontario (AJEFO), Ottawa, June 21, 2003. Topic: Law & Technology
- Invited speaker, Editors Association of Canada, Ottawa, June 15, 2003. Topic: "A Walk Through the Copyright Labyrinth";
- Keynote speaker, Computer Assisted Language Instruction Consortium (CALICO), Ottawa, May 22, 2003. Topic: "Copyright, Copyleft, Copywrong?";
- Invited speaker, Expert Roundtable on Transactions in Intellectual Property, Amsterdam, May 17-18, 2003. Topic: "Fragmentation of Copyright and Rights Management";
- Invited speaker, "The 45th Circuit" (OCRI), Ottawa, Apr. 1, 2003. Topic: "Emerging Issues in Digital Rights Management";
- Invited speaker, Information Highways Conference, Toronto, March 24, 2003. Topic: Digital Rights Management: Balancing Creators Rights and User Interests";
- Invited speaker, Literary and Artistic Association (ALAI Canada), Montreal, Oct. 22, 2002. Topic: « La gestion collective es-elle en crise? »;
- Invited instructor, World Trade Organization (WTO), Nairobi, Sept. 2002. Topic: The TRIPS Agreement after Doha";
- Invited instructor, World Trade Organization (WTO), Casablanca, Sept. 2002. Topic: "The TRIPS Agreement After Doha";
- Invited speaker, Literary and Artistic Association (ALAI Canada), Montreal, May 7, 2002. Topic: « La décision de la Cour suprême dans l'affaire Galeries d'art du Petit Champlain Inc. c. Théberge »;

- Invited instructor. International Copyright Institute (Washington, D.C.), Nov. 2000 and Nov. 2001. Topic: "Collective Management of Copyright in the Digital Age";
- Invited speaker. Annual Meeting of the International Trademark Association (INTA), Denver, CO, USA, May 2000. Topic: "The TRIPS Agreement: Implementation and Dispute Settlement Issues";
- Invited speaker, New York Bar (NYCLA), 2000. Topic: "Current Rights Clearance Issues";
- Invited speaker, Society of Scholarly and Professional Publishers (SSP), Boston, Mass., 1999. Topic: "Copyright Licensing Issues";
- Invited speaker, Canadian Writers Union Conference, Toronto, 2000. Topic: "Copyright Management in the Digital Age";
- Invited Speaker, Heritage Canada Roundtable on Copyright Management, Ottawa, 1999. Topic: "Copyright Management: US Practices";
- Invited speaker, International Publishers Association (IPA) Congress, Tokyo, Japan, 1998. Topic: "Copyright, Publishing in the Face of Technological Change";
- Invited speaker, Marché international du multimédia (MILIA), Cannes, France, 1995. Topic : "Droit d'auteur et multimédia";
- Invited speaker, Chilean Book Fair, Santiago, Chile, 1999. Topic: "El papel de las sociedades de derechos reprográficos y de la IFRRO";
- Invited speaker, Sydney Bar, NSW, Australia, 1996. Topic: "Intellectual Property and Technology"
- Invited speaker, Congress of the International Publishers Association, Barcelona, Spain, 1996. Topic: "Online Copyright Licensing";
- Invited speaker, Pan African Film Festival (FESPACO), Ouagadougou, Burkina Faso, 1994. Topic: "Protection of Intellectual Property in Film";
- Invited speaker, Chambre française du commerce et de l'exportation (CFCE), Paris, 1990. Topic : "TRIPS: Le point à dix semaines de Bruxelles";

h) <u>Publications</u> †

i)	Summary	
	Books authored	8
	Books edited	3
	Book chapters	
	Articles	
	Conference proceedings (refereed)	
	Major reports	
	Other publications	
	Commissioned Reports	

ii) Detailed description

Books (authored)

1. INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY: THE LAW IN CANADA, 2^d ed. (Carswell, 2011) --with Prof. Elizabeth Judge, 1223 p.

[†] Only ACCEPTED publications are indicated as forthcoming.

- 2. L'ACCORD SUR LES ADPIC: PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE À L'OMC (Larcier, 2010), 733 p.
- 3. THE TRIPS AGREEMENT: DRAFTING HISTORY AND ANALYSIS, 3rd ed. (Sweet & Maxwell, December 2008), 785 p.
- 4. LE DROIT DE LA PROPRIETE INTELLECTUELLE, (Yvon Blais, 2006). 702 pages--with Professors Elizabeth Judge and Mistrale Goudreau
- 5. INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY: THE LAW IN CANADA (Carswell, 2005), with Prof. Elizabeth Judge
- 6. THE TRIPS AGREEMENT: DRAFTING HISTORY AND ANALYSIS, 2ND ed. (Sweet & Maxwell, June 2003). 590 p.
- 7. THE TRIPS AGREEMENT: DRAFTING HISTORY AND ANALYSIS. (Sweet & Maxwell, 1998). 444 p.
- 8. LA NOTION D'ŒUVRE DANS AA CONVENTION DE BERNE ET EN DROIT COMPARÉ. (Librairie Droz, 1998). 276 p.

Books (edited)

- 1. COLLECTIVE MANAGEMENT OF COPYRIGHT AND RELATED RIGHTS, 2nd ed. (Kluwer Law International, 2010) 495 p.
- 2. INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY, TRADE AND DEVELOPMENT (Oxford Univ. Press, 2007). 564 p.
- 3. COLLECTIVE MANAGEMENT OF COPYRIGHT AND RELATED RIGHTS (Kluwer Law International, 2006), 464 p.

Book Chapters[‡]

- 1. Traditional Innovation and the Ongoing Debate on the Protection of Geographical Indications, INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY AND INDIGENOUS INNOVATION (P Drahos and S Frankel, eds) (forthcoming)
- 2. The International Legal Framework of Border Measures in the Fight against Counterfeiting and Piracy, Enforcement of Intellectual Property Rights Through Border Measures, 2D Ed. (O. Vrins and M. Schneider eds.). Oxford Univ. Press, 2011 (forthcoming)
- 3. Adjusting Patentability Criteria to Optimize Innovation: A Look at China and India, GLOBAL PERSPECTIVES ON PATENT LAW (M Bagley and R Okediji, eds). Oxford Univ. Press, x (forthcoming)
- 4. The TRIPS Agreement and Climate Change, in RESEARCH HANDBOOK ON INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY AND CLIMATE CHANGE (Joshua Sarnoff, ed.) (forthcoming)
- 5. Copyright, Culture and the Cloud, in BITS WITHOUT BORDERS (Sean Pager & Adam Candeub, eds.) (forthcoming)
- 6. Country Clubs, Empiricism, Blogs and Innovation: The Future of International Intellectual Property Norm-Making in the Wake of ACTA, TRADE GOVERNANCE IN THE DIGITAL AGE, Mira Burri and Thomas Cottier (eds). Cambridge University Press, 2011 (forthcoming)

[‡] R= refereed publication.

- 7. **R** The TRIPS Agreement, MAX PLANCK ENCYCLOPEDIA OF PUBLIC INTERNATIONAL LAW; (forthcoming, 2011)
- 8. TRIPS Articles 10; 63-71, in CONCISE INTERNATIONAL AND EUROPEAN IP LAW, 2D ED. (Th. Cottier and P. Véron, eds). Kluwer Law International, 2011, pp. 38-42 and 168-186
- 9. <u>User-Generated Content and Music File-Sharing: A Look at Some of the More Interesting Aspects of Bill C-32</u>, in FROM "RADICAL EXTREMISM" TO "BALANCED COPYRIGHT": CANADIAN COPYRIGHT AND THE DIGITAL AGENDA (M. Geist, ed.)
- 10. Of Silos and Constellations: Comparing Notions of Originality in Copyright Law, in INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY PROTECTION OF FACT-BASED WORKS (Robert F. Brauneis, ed) (Edward Elgar, 2010) 74-106--with Professor Elizabeth Judge;
 - Also published as an article (see below)
- 11. Policy Calibration and Innovation Displacement, in DEVELOPING COUNTRIES IN THE WTO LEGAL SYSTEM (J. Trachtman, and Ch. Thomas, eds.) (Oxford Univ. Pr., 2009) 363-394;
- 12. TRIPS 3.0, in The Development Agenda: Global Intellectual Property and Developing Countries (N. Netanel, ed) 51-75. (Oxford Univ. Pr., 2009)
- 13. **R** <u>A Uniquely Canadian Institution: The Copyright Board of Canada</u>, in A NEW INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY PARADIGM: THE CANADIAN EXPERIENCE (Y. Gendreau ed). (Edward Elgar, 2009)
- 14. TRIPS Article 10; Articles 63-71, in CONCISE INTERNATIONAL AND EUROPEAN IP LAW (Th. Cottier and P. Véron, eds). (Kluwer Law International, 2008), 39-42 et 153-170
- 15. <u>Intellectual Property and Human Rights: Learning to Live Together</u>, in INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY AND HUMAN RIGHTS (P. Torremans, ed). (Wolters Kluwer, 2008) 3-24
- 16. **R** A Canadian Copyright Narrative, in COPYRIGHT LAW: A HANDBOOK OF CONTEMPORARY RESEARCH. (P. Torremans, ed.) (Edward Elgar, 2007) 49-82;
- 17. The Changing Landscape of International Intellectual Property, in, INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY AND FREE TRADE AGREEMENTS. (Christopher Heath and Ansel Kamperman Sanders, eds) (Oxford: Hart Publishing, 2007), 49-86;
- 18. TRIPS and Development, in INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY, TRADE AND DEVELOPMENT (D. Gervais, ed--see under Books (edited) above), 3-60
- 19. A TRIPS Implementation Toolbox, in idem, 527-545
- 20. Traditional Knowledge and Intellectual Property; A TRIPS Compatible Approach, in, IPR PROTECTION AND TRIPS COMPLIANCE. (Veena, ed.) (Amicus/ICFAI University Press, 2007), 146-178;
 - Republication of article listed under No. 24 below
- 21. Em busca de uma Norma Internacional para os Direito de Autor: O 'Teste dos Três Passos Reversos', in Propiedade Intelectual (Edson Beas Rodrigues Jr et Fabrício Polido, eds), (Rio de Janeiro, Elsevier, 2007), 201-232 (republication of article listed under No 22 in list below)
- 22. The TRIPS Agreement and the Changing Landscape of International intellectual Property, in INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY AND TRIPS COMPLIANCE IN CHINA. (Paul Torremans et al., eds). (Edward Elgar, 2007), 65-84
- 23. The TRIPS Agreement and the Doha Round: History and Impact on Development, in

- INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY AND INFORMATION WEALTH. (Peter Yu, ed), (Praeger, 2006), vol. 3, 23-72.
- 24. The Changing Role of Copyright Collectives, in COLLECTIVE MANAGEMENT OF COPYRIGHT AND RELATED RIGHTS. (Daniel Gervais, ed.) (Kluwer Law International, 2006), 3-36
- 25. R The Role of International Treaties in the Interpretation of Canadian Intellectual Property Statutes, in The Globalized Rule of Law: Relationships between International and Domestic Law. (O. Fitzgerald, ed), (Toronto: Irwin Law, 2006), 549-572
- 26. R Le rôle des traits internationaux dans l'interprétation des lois canadiennes sur la propriété intellectuelle, in O. Fitzgerald (ed), RÈGLE DE DROIT ET MONDIALISATION: RAPPORTS ENTRE LE DROIT INTERNATIONAL ET LE DROIT INTERNE (Yvon Blais, 2006), 679-712;
 - French version of previous item in list
- 27. **R** The TRIPS Enforcement Provisions, in, CONCISE COMMENTARY OF EUROPEAN INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY LAW (Thomas Dreier, Charles Gielen, Richard Hacon, eds.) (Kluwer Law International, 2006)
- 28. The TRIPS Agreement, in BORDER MEASURES IN THE EUROPEAN UNION. (OLIVIER VRINS AND MARIUS SCHNEIDER, EDS.), (Oxford University Press, 2006), 37-62;
- 29. **R** <u>Use of Copyright Content on the Internet: Considerations on Excludability and Collective Licensing</u>, in IN THE PUBLIC INTEREST: THE FUTURE OF COPYRIGHT LAW IN CANADA (Michael Geist, ed). (Toronto: Irwin Law, Oct. 2005);
- 30. Copyright and eCommerce: License or Lock-up?, in INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY IN THE GLOBAL MARKETPLACE: 2001 UPDATE. (Neil Wilkof et al. eds.), (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2002). 18 p.

Articles in English§

- 1. The Landscape of Collective Management, COLUM-VLA J. L & ARTS (2011) (forthcoming)
- 2. Cloud Control: Copyright, Global Memes and Privacy, J. TELECOM. & HIGH TECH L. (2011) (coauthored with Dan Hyndman) (forthcoming)
- 3. <u>Making Copyright Whole: A Principled Approach to Copyright Exceptions and Limitations</u>, 5:1/2 UNIV. OTTAWA L. & TECH. J. 1-41 (2008)*
 - Published in March 2011
- 4. The Google Book Settlement and the TRIPS Agreement, 2011 STAN. TECH. L.R. 1-11;
- 5. Fair Use, Fair Dealing, Fair Principles: Efforts to Conceptualize Exceptions and Limitations to Copyright, 57:3 J. COPYRIGHT. SOC.Y OF THE USA 499-520 (2010);
 - Reprinted in INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY LAW REVIEW (2011) as one of best intellectual property articles of 2010
- 6. <u>Reinventing Lisbon: The Case for a Protocol to the Lisbon Agreement</u>, 11:1 CHICAGO J. INT'L L.67-126 (2010);

[§] Only accepted publications indicated as forthcoming. Book reviews are listed separately.

- 7. The Regulation of Inchoate Technologies, 47 HOUSTON L. REV. 665 (2010);
- 8. <u>The 1909 Copyright Act in Historical Context</u>, 26:2 SANTA CLARA HIGH TECH L.J.185-214 (2010);
- 9. L'Arrangement de Lisbonne, un véhicule pour l'internationalisation du droit des indications géographiques ? 35 PROPRIÉTÉS INTELLECTUELLES 691 (2010) (coauthored with Prof. Christophe Geiger, Norbert Olszak and Vincent Ruzek
- 10. Towards a Flexible International Framework for the Protection of Geographical Indications, 1:2 WIPO JOURNAL 147-158 (2010) (coauthored with Prof. Christophe Geiger, Norbert Olszak and Vincent Ruzek)
 - English version of previous title
- 11. <u>The Misunderstood Potential of the Lisbon Agreement</u>, 1:1 WIPO JOURNAL 87-102 (inaugural issue on invitation) (2010)
- 12. <u>Of Silos and Constellations: Comparing Notions of Originality in Copyright Law</u>, 27:2 CARDOZO ARTS & ENTERTAINMENT L. J. 375-408 (2009)--with Professor Elizabeth Judge;
- 13. <u>Traditional Knowledge: Are We Closer to the Answers?</u>, 15:2 ILSA J. OF INT'L. AND COMP. LAW 551-567 (2009);
- 14. <u>The Tangled Web of User-Generated Content</u>, 11:4 VAND. J. OF TECHNOLOGY AND ENTERTAINMENT LAW 841-870 (2009);
- 15. World Trade Organization panel report on China's enforcement of intellectual property rights, 103:3 AM. J. INT'L L.549-554 (2009) (International Decision--on invitation);
- 16. <u>Of Clusters and Assumptions: Innovation as Part of a Full TRIPS Implementation</u>, 77:5 FORDHAM L. R. 2353-2377 (2009)
- 17. R A Canadian Copyright Narrative, 21 INT. PROP. J. (Can.) 269 (2009)
 - Republication of book chapter with same title
- 18. The Protection of Databases, 82:3 CHI-KENT L. REV. 1101-1169 (2007);
- 19. **R** *The Purpose of Copyright Law in Canada*, 2:2 UNIV. OTTAWA. J. L. & TECH. 315-356 (2006);
- 20. **R** The Changing Landscape of International Intellectual Property, 2 J. OF INTELL. PROP. LAW & PRACTICE 1-8 (2006);
- 21. <u>Intellectual Property and Development: The State of Play</u>, 74 FORDHAM LAW REVIEW 505-535 (2005);
- 22. <u>Towards A New Core International Copyright Norm: The Reverse Three-Step Test</u>, 9 MARQ. INTELL. PROP. L. REV. 1-37 (2005);
- 23. Copyright in Canada: An Update After CCH, REVUE INT. DROIT D'AUTEUR RIDA 2-61(2005);
 - Also published in French (see below)
- 24. <u>Traditional Knowledge & Intellectual Property: A TRIPS-Compatible Approach</u>, [2005] MICH. St. L. Rev. 137-166;
- 25. **R** International Intellectual Property and Development: A Roadmap to Balance?, 2:4 J. OF GENERIC MEDICINES 327-334 (2005);

- 26. <u>The Price of Social Norms: Towards a Liability Regime for File-Sharing</u>, 12 J. INTELL. PROP. L. 39-74 (2004);
- 27. **R** The Compatibility of 'Skill & Labour' with the Berne Convention and the TRIPS Agreement, [2004] 2 Eur. Int. Prop Rev. 75-80;
- 28. Canadian Copyright Law Post CCH, 18:2 INTELL. PROP. J. (Can.) 131-168 (2004);
- 29. <u>Spiritual but Not Intellectual? The Protection of Sacred Intangible Traditional Knowledge</u>, 11 CARDOZO J. OF INT'L & COMP. LAW 467-495(2003);
- 30. **R** TRIPS, Doha & Traditional Knowledge: A Proposal, 6 J. WORLD INT. PROP. 403-419 (2003);
- 31. **R** Fragmented Copyright, Fragmented Management: Proposals to Defrag Copyright Management, 2 CAN .J. OF L. & TECH 15-34 (2003) (with Prof. Alana Maurushat)
- 32. **R** Feist Goes Global: A Comparative Analysis of the Notion of Originality in Copyright Law, 49:4 J. COPYRIGHT. SOC.Y OF THE USA 949-981(2002);*
 - Winner, Charles Best Seton Award, Best Article of 2002-3, Copyright Society of the USA
 - Article cited by the Chief Justice of Canada in *CCH Canadian Inc. v. Law Society of Upper Canada*, [2004] 1 S.C.R. 339 (Can.), at para. 18.
- 33. <u>The Internationalization of Intellectual Property: New Challenges from the Very Old and the Very New</u>, 12:4: FORDHAM INTELL. PROP., MEDIA & ENTERTAINMENT L. J. 929-990 (2002);
- 34. **R** Collective Management of Copyright and Neighboring Rights in Canada: An International Perspective, 1 CAN. J. OF LAW & TECH. 21-50 (2002);
- 35. <u>Transmission of Music on the Internet: A Comparative Study of the Laws of Canada, France, Japan, the U.K. and the United States</u>, 34:3 VANDERBILT J. OF TRANSNAT'L L. 1363-1416 (2001);
 - Article cited in the majority opinion of the Supreme Court of Canada in Society of Composers, Authors and Music Publishers of Canada v. Canadian Association of Internet Providers, 2004 SCC 45 (Can.), at para. 75.
- 36. **R** The TRIPS Agreement After Seattle: Implementation and Dispute Settlement Issues 3 J. OF WORLD INT. PROP. 509-523(2000);
- 37. R Electronic Rights Management Systems, 3 J. of World Int. Prop. 77-95 (2000);
- 38. **R** The TRIPS Agreement: Interpretation and Implementation, 3 Eur. Int. Prop. Rev., 156-162 (1999);
- 39. **R** Intellectual Property in the MAI: Lessons to Be Learned, 2 J. WORLD INT. PROP. 257-274 (1999) (with Vera Nicholas)
- 40. **R** Electronic Rights Management and Digital Identifier Systems, J. ELEC. PUBLISHING, online only, March 1999. Available at http://www.press.umich.edu/jep/04-03. (18 pages)
- 41. *RThe Protection Under International Copyright Law of Works Created with or by Computers*, 5 IIC INTERN'L REV. INDL PROP. AND COPYRIGHT L. 629-660 (1991).

Articles in French and other languages

- 1. Trente ans de droit d'auteur à la Cour suprême du Canada, 21 :2 CAHIERS DE PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE 419-448 (2009)
- 2. Propiedad intelectual y derechos humanos: aprediendo a vivir juntos, 3:5 REVISTA IBEROAMERICANA DE DERECHO DE AUTOR (2009)
 - o Edited translation of book chapter with same title
- 3. Roberston c. Thomson Corp. : *Un commentaire sur le droit des pigistes à la lumière de l'intervention de la Cour suprême du Canada*, 3 :2 REVUE DE DROIT & TECHNOLOGIE DE L'UNIVERSITÉ D'OTTAWA/UNIVERSITY OF OTTAWA LAW & TECHNOLOGY JOURNAL, 601-614 (2006):
 - o French version of article mentioned at no 25 in list above.
- 4. **R** Le droit d'auteur au Canada après CCH, 203 REVUE INT. DROIT D'AUTEUR RIDA 2-61(2005);
- 5. **R** Essai sur la fragmentation du droit d'auteur : Deuxième partie 16 CAHIERS DE PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE 501-536 (2004);
- 6. **R** Etre au parfum: La protection des marques olfactives en droit canadien, 15 CAHIERS DE PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE 865-904(2003);
- 7. **R** Essai sur la fragmentation du droit d'auteur : Première partie, 15 CAHIERS DE PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE 501-536 (2003);
- 8. R L'affaire Théberge, 15 CAHIERS DE PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE 217-240 (2002);
- 9. **R** Los sistemas básicos de derecho de autor y copyright: La noción de obra y la gestión de los derechos de autor, 26 REVISTA DE DERECHO PRIVADO, 15-27(2001);
- 10. **R** La Responsabilité des États à l'égard des actes des organes judiciaires, 6 R.Q.D.I. 71-82 (1989-1990);
- 11. RLe Droit de refuser un traitement psychiatrique au Québec; 26 CAHIERS DE DROIT 807 (1985)

Conference Proceedings (Refereed)

- R Le droit d'auteur au Canada: fragmentation ou gestion fragmentaire, in INSTITUTIONS ADMINISTRATIVES DU DROIT D'AUTEUR.(Y. Gendreau, ed.). (Cowansville: Éditions Yvon Blais, 2002), 459-477

Other Publications—All languages

- 1. <u>The Google Book Settlement and International Intellectual Property Law</u>, 15:9 ASIL INSIGHT (Apr, 11, 2011)
- 2. Foreword, in IMPLEMENTING THE WIPO DEVELOPMENT AGENDA (Jeremy DeBeer, Ed.). Ottawa: Wilfrid Laurier University Press. 2009. ix-xii;
- 3. Collective Management of Copyright and Related Rights in North America, in ASIAN COPYRIGHT SEMINAR, (Tokyo, Feb. 25, 2009) 17-72;
- 4. La Parodie et le moyen de défense fondé sur l'« intérêt du public », in Droit d'Auteur et Liberté d'expression/Copyright and Freedom of Expression, 2006 Barcelone, (ALAI, 2008);
- 5. Litigation, not politics, drives change in IP, 25:28, THE LAWYERS WEEKLY (November 25, 2005) 2 pages;

- 6. TRIPS: A Question of Balance. IPR INFO (Helsinki: Immateriaalioikeuinstituutti), 2/2005, 26-27;
- 7. The Realignment of Copyright in Canada. Twelfth National Conference on Communications Law, Toronto, April 7, 2005 (51 pages);
- 8. The Changing Face of Copyright, 7:4 COPYRIGHT & NEW MEDIA LAW NEWSLETTER, 3 pages (2003);
- 9. Arbitration Concerning Intellectual property Rights: A Key to the Success of the Doha Round, 7:2 J. OF WORLD INT. PROP. 245-248 (2004);
- 10. The Evolving Role(s) of Copyright Collectives, in DIGITAL RIGHT MANAGEMENT THE END OF COLLECTING SOCIETIES?" (Christoph Beat Graber, ed.) (Lucerne, 2005);
- 11. A Viable Rights Clearance Scheme, 6:2 COPYRIGHT & NEW MEDIA LAW NEWSLETTER 3 (2002);
- 12. "Copyright and the Use Paradigm," *in* COPYMART: THE PRODUCT AND ITS PROSPECTS: PROCEEDINGS OF THE BERLIN SYMPOSIUM. (Z. Kitagawa, ed.), (Kyoto: IIAS, 2003), 109-116;
- 13. "Traditional Knowledge: A Challenge to the International Intellectual Property System," *in*, 7 INTERNATIONAL INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY LAW AND POLICY. (New York: Juris, 2002). ch 76-1;
- 14. "The TRIPS Agreement: Life After Seattle?," in 6 INTERNATIONAL INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY LAW AND POLICY. (New York: Juris, 2001). ch. 40-1;
- 15. E-Commerce and Intellectual Property: Lock-it Up or License?, in 6 INTERNATIONAL INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY LAW AND POLICY. (New York: Juris, 2001). ch. 87-1;
- 16. Electronic Rights Management Systems, in Y2C: COPYRIGHT LAW 2000 (Jon A. Baumgarten and Marybeth Peters, eds), (New Jersey: Glasser Legal Works: 2000) (15 pages);
- 17. An Overview of TRIPS: Historical and Current Issues, in 5 INTERNATIONAL INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY LAW AND POLICY. (New York: Juris, 2000), ch. 40;
- 18. Digital Distance Education: Exemption or Licensing?, in, 4 INTERNATIONAL INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY LAW AND POLICY. (New York: Juris, 1999), ch. 87;
- 19. Copyright Aspects of Electronic Publishing, in PROCEEDINGS OF EP'94, (Beijing: The Science Press, 1994) 4-12;
- 20. ECMS: From Rights Trading to Electronic Publishing, in The Publisher In The Changing Markets. Proceedings Of Ipa Fourth International Copyright Symposium. (Tokyo: Ohmsha, 1998). 194-212 (18 pages);
- 21. The TRIPS Agreement: Enforcement and Dispute-Settlement Provisions, in The Publisher In The Changing Markets. Proceedings Of Ipa Fourth International Copyright Symposium (Tokyo: Ohmsha, 1998). 230-236 (7 pages);
- 22. « L'état des lieux: la gestion collective dans le monde, en Europe et en France ». (Paris: SACEM, 1996). (11 pages);
- 23. « Gestion des droits », in ACTES DU COLLOQUE LES AUTOROUTES DE L'INFORMATION : ENJEUX ET DÉFIS », HUITIÈMES ENTRETIENS DU CENTRE JACQUES CARTIER RHÔNE-ALPES. (Lyons: Université de Lyon-2, 1996);
- 24. « Les 'œuvres multimédia' : le point de vue de l'OMPI », in LE MULTIMÉDIA : MARCHÉ, DROIT ET PRATIQUES JURIDIQUES. ACTES DU JURISCOPE 94. (Paris : P.U.F., 1995). (8 pages);

- 25. « Identificación de las obras utilizadas en sistemas digitales », in Num Novo Mundo Do Direito DE Autor. (Lisbon: COSMOS/Arco-Iris, 1994). (17 pages);
- 26. "El principio del trato nacional en los acuerdos internacionales de propiedad intelectual", same book— (15 pages);

Book Reviews

- T. Scassa and M. Deturbide. Electronic Commerce Law In Canada (Toronto: CCH, 2004). Reviewed at 42 CAN. BUS. L. J. 292-310 (2005);
- Le Droit du Commerce Électronique. (V. Gautrais, ed.). (Montréal, Thémis, 2002. 709 pp.), reviewed at 33 REVUE GÉNÉRALE DE DROIT 489-505 (2003)

Technical Reports, Law Reform, and Commissioned Research Work

- 1. Fair Dealing, the Three Step test and Exceptions in the Canadian Copyright Act, Report commissioned by Industry Canada, November 2007
- 2. Application of an Extended Licensing Regime in Canada: Principles and Issues Related to Implementation. Department of Canadian Heritage, July 2003*
- 3. Collective Management of Copyright and Neighboring Rights in Canada: An International Perspective. Department of Canadian Heritage, August 2001*
- 4. Intellectual Property Practices in the Field of Biotechnology. Report published by the Trade Directorate, Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD), Paris 1999. Document No. TD/TC/WP(98)15/FINAL.(23 pages);
- 5. THE LAW AND PRACTICE OF DIGITAL ENCRYPTION. (Amsterdam: University of Amsterdam, 1998). (64 pages)
- 6. ECMS: The Policy Issues, in IMPRIMATUR CONSENSUS FORUM. 21/22 NOVEMBER 1996. (London: Imprimatur, 1996).

EXHIBIT B

Exhibit B to Gervais Report

- 1. The Fourth Amended Class Action Complaint
- Google Objections and Responses to Plaintiffs' First Requests for Admissions
- 3. Plaintiffs' Brief in Support of Their Motion for Class Certification
- 4. Zack Decl. and Exhibits in support of motion for class certification
- 5. Google's Brief in Opposition to Class Certification
- 6. Clancy Decl., Gratz Decl., Perle Decl., Poret Decl. and Report, filed with Google class certification opposition
- 7. Google's brief and reply brief in support of its motion to dismiss the Authors Guild
- 8. Plaintiffs' brief in opposition to Google's motion to dismiss the Authors Guild
- 9. The materials cited in my report
- 10. The article available at http://papers.ssrn.com/so13/papers.cfm and materials cited therein
- 11. The books.google.com website
- 12. The Complaint, Answer and Plaintiffs' brief in support of motion for partial judgment on the pleadings in *Authors Guild, et al. v. Hathitrust*, et al., 11 Civ. 6351 (HB)(S.D.N.Y.)

EXHIBIT 4

1

1			
2	UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK		
3			
4		PLAINTIFFS,	
5			
6	-against-	Case No: 05CV8136 (DC)	
7	COOCIE INC		
8	GOOGLE INC.,	DEFENDANT.	
10		X	
11	DATE: December 15, 2011		
12	TIME: 1:00 P.M.		
13			
14			
15	DEPOSITION of a Witness, JIM BOUTON, on		
16	behalf of the Plaintiffs, taken by the Defendants,		
17	pursuant to a Notice and to the Federal Rules of Civil		
18	Procedure, held at the offices of MILBERG, LLP, One		
19	Pennsylvania Plaza, New York, New York 10119, before		
20	Deborah Garzaniti, a Notary Public of the State of New		
21	York.		
22			
23			
24			
25			

3

- 1 J I M B O U T O N, called as a witness, having been
- 2 first duly sworn by a Notary Public of the State of New
- 3 York, was examined and testified as follows:
- 4 EXAMINATION BY
- 5 MS. DURIE:
- 6 Q. Please state your name for the record.
- 7 A. Jim Bouton.
- Q. What is your address?
- 9 A. Care of Boni & Zack, LLC, 15 St. Asaphs
- 10 Road, Bala Cynwyd, Pennsylvania 19004.
- 11 Q. Good afternoon.
- 12 A. Good afternoon.
- 13 Q. You understand that you are here giving a
- 14 deposition in a case that has been brought against
- 15 Google?
- 16 A. Yes.
- 17 Q. What is that case about?
- 18 A. It is about whether Google has the right
- 19 to copy and disseminate copyrighted books.
- Q. When you say "whether Google has the
- 21 right to disseminate copyrighted books," what do you
- 22 mean by disseminate?
- 23 A. Well, I am not sure. Let's leave it that
- 24 they are violating copyrights.
- 25 Q. Do you have an understanding as to how it

4

- 1 is that Google is violating copyrights, in your opinion?
- A. Well, they are simply copying them. They
- 3 don't have the right to copy copyrighted materials.
- 4 Q. So is your primary contention in this
- 5 case that Google is violating copyright laws by making
- 6 electronic copyright works?
- 7 MR. BONI: Objection to the form. If you can
- 8 answer, answer the question.
- 9 A. Repeat it again.
- 10 Q. Sure.
- 11 Is your primary contention in this case that
- 12 Google is violating the copyright laws by making an
- 13 electronic copy of copyright works?
- 14 A. That is certainly one of them.
- 15 Q. What else is it about Google's conduct
- 16 that you believe is violating the copyright laws, in
- 17 addition to making electronic copy?
- 18 A. That they are using this material, making
- 19 it available for other people, making digital copies for
- 20 libraries, putting pieces of it on the Internet, using
- 21 excerpts from the book in order to make advertising
- 22 money. They never called me and asked if they could do
- 23 that, never offered me any money to use my books in a
- 24 way that allowed them to make money.
- 25 Q. I want to ask you about each of those

- 1 Q. Where have you read that?
- 2 A. Newspapers.
- 3 Q. Have you read anything else, to your
- 4 recollection, that says that Google sells advertising in
- 5 conjunction with the display of excerpts of books?
- A. I don't know what other sources. I am
- 7 just aware of the fact that they do that.
- Q. You said that you've seen this as well.
- 9 Can you describe to me the circumstance under which
- 10 you've seen that?
- 11 A. I seen the advertising. I don't recall.
- 12 Q. Is one of the facts that gives you
- 13 concern in this case your belief that Google is
- 14 profiting from advertising revenue in conjunction with
- 15 displaying excerpts of books?
- 16 A. Either because they already done it or
- 17 they would have the potential to do it. My point is, my
- 18 feeling is that they should not have the right to
- 19 reproduce the book or any portion of the book without
- 20 getting my permission.
- 21 Q. Let's go back to the various reasons that
- 22 you gave for being concerned about Google's conduct. We
- 23 talked about in connection with Ball Four, the display
- 24 of the cover and excerpts of your book. You also made
- 25 reference to giving copies of works to libraries; is

- 1 that right?
- 2 A. Yes.
- 3 Q. Is that a claim that you understand as
- 4 being made in this lawsuit?
- 5 A. Yes.
- Q. How is it that you come to have that
- 7 understanding?
- 8. A. How did I come to have that
- 9 understanding?
- 10 Q. Yes.
- 11 A. I have read that in the newspapers, I am
- 12 aware of the lawsuits against Google. I can't tell you
- 13 the exact source of it.
- Q. Have you read the Complaint in this case?
- 15 A. Yes.
- 16 Q. Does the Complaint in this case make
- 17 reference to the return of digital copies to libraries?
- 18 A. Yes, so I am aware of it there also.
- 19 Q. Do you have an understanding as to what,
- 20 if anything, libraries are doing with digital copies
- 21 that have been returned to them?
- 22 A. No, I don't know what they are doing with
- 23 them. I don't want them to have the right to do
- 24 whatever they want also.
- Q. Why is that?

- A. Because it is protected by copyright and
- 2 they would need to ask my permission to use that digital
- 3 copy in any way that they choose.
- 4 Q. Do you think that libraries would need to
- 5 ask your permission in order to use the digital copies
- 6 particularly to index your work in their collection?
- 7 MR. BONI: Objection to the form.
- 8 A. In other words, if you are saying that a
- 9 library uses a digital list to list all of the books
- 10 that they have in their library, that would certainly be
- 11 an acceptable use of it, but to have a digitized copy of
- 12 my book, no, they don't have the right to do that.
- Q. My question assumes that libraries are
- 14 using digital copies of books for the purpose of
- 15 generating electronic indexes.
- 16 A. Why would they need to make a copy of the
- 17 book if they are just indexing the books in their
- 18 library? Why would they need to make a copy of the
- 19 book?
- Q. First let me ask the question. Is it
- 21 your view that using an electronic copy of a book to
- 22 generate an index of works in a library collection is
- 23 something that you would not consent to?
- A. I would not consent to that. I don't
- 25 think they need a digitized copy of the book in order to

- 1 things, is there anything else that you challenge?
- 2 A. Well, I am challenging on behalf of the
- 3 class that I am a member of.
- 4 O. Understood.
- 5 A. Okay.
- 6 Q. But as a representative of the class that
- 7 you are here on behalf of, is there any other conduct
- 8 that you are challenging?
- 9 A. I don't think so.
- 10 Q. Now, what is it that you want the Court
- 11 to do in response to this lawsuit?
- 12 A. I want the Court to realize that these
- 13 are copyrighted materials and that Google has violated
- 14 that copyright by making copies of these books, that is
- 15 one.
- Q. Are you asking the Court for money on
- 17 behalf of the class?
- 18 A. Yes.
- 19 Q. Do you have an understanding as to how
- 20 much money you are asking?
- 21 A. Yes, \$750 per book.
- Q. Are you also asking the Court to order
- 23 Google to shut down the portion of Google Books that
- 24 shows quotes from those books in response to a search?
- 25 A. I don't know if that is the proper remedy

- 1 for that, so.
- Q. Would you want the Court to shut down
- 3 that feature in Google Books?
- 4 A. If it is part of what Google needs to do
- 5 in order to avoid copyright violations, yes.
- 6 Q. Do you have a view that Google would need
- 7 to shut down the part of Google Books that allows for
- 8 quotes from books to be displayed in order not to be
- 9 violating copyright?
- 10 A. As far as I am concerned, they violated
- 11 the copyright if they have done nothing with it.
- 12 Q. I understand that.
- 13 A. So then it would follow that. I am also
- 14 against them using that digital copy in any way that
- 15 they want. So I am against them using it in the way
- 16 they used it. I am against them using, having a copy in
- 17 the first place.
- 18 Q. Do you think first it would benefit you
- 19 personally for the portion of Google Books that displays
- 20 quotes from the books in response to search results to
- 21 be shut down?
- MR. BONI: Object to the form.
- 23 A. I don't know if that is the best
- 24 solution. I don't know.
- Q. Do you have any other solution?

- 1 MR. BONI: I object to the form. I also
- 2 object to the extent that any part of that question
- 3 calls for the substance of any discussions we had in the
- 4 attorney-client relationship, Jim. So Daralyn's
- 5 question clearly asks for discussions prior to the time
- 6 that we formed an attorney-client relationship, but do
- 7 not recite any substance of discussions that we had once
- 8 we formed the attorney-client relationship. Okay?
- 9 THE WITNESS: Yes.
- 10 A. So now repeat the question.
- 11 Q. What did Mr. Boni tell you about the
- 12 lawsuit when you agreed to become a Plaintiff?
- 13 A. I don't recall.
- Q. Do you remember anything that you had
- 15 learned about the case prior to the time that you agreed
- 16 to become a Plaintiff?
- 17 A. Nothing more than -- nothing more than
- 18 the fact that there was such a lawsuit being formed or
- 19 organized.
- 20 Q. Why was it that you agreed to be one of
- 21 the named class representatives in this case?
- 22 A. Because I believe in collective action
- 23 sometimes to get things done. I was a baseball player
- 24 and required collective action on the part of the
- 25 players to get rights in that industry.

- 1 A. I have no idea.
- 2 Q. Do you have a view as to how time
- 3 consuming it would be to make that request?
- 4 A. Do I have an idea how time consuming it
- 5 would be to have me make the request or get a response?
- Q. No, make the request.
- 7 A. I don't know how time consuming it would
- 8 be. I am not even sure what the procedure would be to
- 9 do that.
- 10 Q. Have you ever investigated how to make a
- 11 request to Google to remove the display of quotes from
- 12 any of your books from Google Books?
- A. I haven't investigated how to do that.
- Q. What do you understand your role in this
- 15 case to be as a class representative?
- 16 A. Simply to represent the class.
- 17 Q. Do you have an understanding as to what
- 18 your job is in representing the class?
- 19 A. Yes, to be an example of the group.
- Q. What have you done so far in your
- 21 capacity as a class representative in this case?
- 22 A. I have read all of the materials and if a
- 23 class member were to question me, I think I can give
- 24 pretty good answers about the lawsuit, what it is about,
- 25 so I see my role here as, at this stage, an educator.

- 1 Q. An educator of the class members?
- A. No, an educator as to what is being
- 3 sought here for the benefit of other class members when
- 4 they want to know what the lawsuit is about.
- 5 Q. When you say your role here as an
- 6 educator, who are you educating?
- 7 A. Other class members.
- Q. So you see part of your role as educating
- 9 other class members about what the lawsuit is about?
- 10 A. Yes, if they were to call me up,
- 11 contacted me.
- 12 Q. You said that you have reviewed all of
- 13 the materials. What are the materials that you
- 14 reviewed?
- 15 A. Well, of course all of the documents that
- 16 come from my own files for one thing and I reviewed the
- 17 Complaint.
- 18 Q. Are there any other materials that you
- 19 reviewed?
- 20 A. There may be, but I might not know
- 21 offhand the legal term for the document. I have seen a
- 22 number of documents.
- 23 Q. Are they documents that were filed with
- 24 the Court?
- 25 A. I think so, yes.

- 1 A. No.
- Q. Was the copyright in Foul Ball registered
- 3 within three months of its publication?
- 4 A. I believe so.
- 5 Q. Do you have any basis for that belief,
- 6 other than your understanding, as to standard practice?
- 7 A. No.
- Q. You understand that in this case you are
- 9 representing a class of authors; is that right?
- 10 A. Yes.
- 11 Q. Included within that class are the
- 12 authors of various different kinds of works; correct?
- 13 A. Yes.
- 14 Q. Included within the class are academics
- 15 who write books as part of their academic
- 16 responsibilities; is that correct?
- 17 A. Yes, I am assuming so.
- 18 Q. For example, included within the class
- 19 might be a professor who writes books in an effort to
- 20 get tenure; correct?
- 21 A. Yes.
- Q. Do you feel that you are qualified to
- 23 represent the perspectives of those academic authors?
- A. Generally speaking, with respect to the
- 25 Complaint, yes.

- 1 Q. Why is that?
- A. Because their books are copyrighted, my
- 3 books are copyrighted, that is the commonality here.
- 4 Whether it is a gardening book or a history book or
- 5 academic textbook or a baseball book, we are all
- 6 protected by copyrights.
- 7 Q. Do you know whether academic authors
- 8 might have different interests in the dissemination of
- 9 their books?
- MR. BONI: Object to the form.
- 11 A. I don't know whether they have different
- 12 interests or not. They might have.
- 13 MS. DURIE: Let me have marked as the next
- 14 exhibit a one-page document bearing a fax line of
- 15 July 16, 2003.
- 16 (Whereupon, the aforementioned document was
- 17 marked as Bouton Exhibit 9 for identification as of this
- 18 date by the Reporter.)
- 19 Q. Do you recognize what has been marked as
- 20 Exhibit 9?
- 21 A. Yes.
- Q. Can you tell me what it is?
- 23 A. Yes. Somebody is asking permission to
- 24 use -- I am trying to figure out what book is involved
- 25 here. Yes, they want to use -- they have asked

- 1 but it is something that I probably did.
- Q. Have you checked to see whether there is
- 3 a copyright registration?
- A. No. I will check when I get home.
- 5 MS. DURIE: No further questions.
- 6 MR. BONI: I have a couple.
- 7 EXAMINATION BY
- 8 MR. BONI:
- 9 Q. You testified earlier about your role as
- 10 a class representative. Do you recall that testimony?
- 11 A. Yes.
- 12 Q. Do you have anything that you want to
- 13 amplify with respect to your response to that question?
- A. As to my duties you mean?
- 15 Q. Yes.
- 16 A. Yes, I see myself as educating other
- 17 class members who I expect will be, you know, calling me
- 18 once in a while to see how things are going or explain
- 19 this or that to them. Also I expect to have some say in
- 20 the direction of the Complaint of the lawsuit, major
- 21 developments I expect to be apprised of and as to my
- 22 thoughts, anything to do with the settlement I would
- 23 think would be part of my duties to evaluate and give my
- 24 opinion.
- MR. BONI: No further questions.

EXHIBIT 5

	1				
1	UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT				
2	SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK				
3					
4					
5	THE AUTHORS GUILD, et al.				
6	Plaintiffs Civil Action No.				
7	vs. 1:2005cv08136				
8	GOOGLE, INC.				
9	Defendant				
10	/				
11					
12					
13					
14	The Deposition of JOSEPH GOULDEN was held on				
15	Friday, January 6, 2012, commencing at 12:57 p.m., at				
16	the Offices of Gore Brothers Reporting &				
17	Videoconferencing, 1025 Connecticut Avenue, N.W., Suite				
18	1000, Farragut Square, Washington, D.C. 20036, before				
19	Christine A. Gonzalez, CSR, RPR, a Notary Public.				
20					
21					
22					
23					
24					
25	REPORTED BY: Christine A. Gonzalez, CSR, RPR				

1 Correct. Correct. Α. 2 Q. What is this lawsuit go? About Google's unlawful infringement of the 3 Α. 4 copyright in books written by me and many, many other 5 writers. Anything else? 6 Q. 7 I think that fairly well covers it. Α. What are you asking the Court to do? 8 Q. 9 To require Google to obey the law, receive a Α. permanent injunction against further digitalization of 10 books and whatever relief the Court might decide upon. 11 12 Are you asking for money? 0. 13 \$750. Α. Why are you asking for that amount of money? 14 0. 15 Α. That is the amount that was recommended by 16 Mr. Boni. 17 Q. Do you think that's an appropriate amount? Because I'm trying to establish a principle, 18 19 Pardon me. Make that, defend a principle, yes. 20 I'm not in this for the money. 21 Are you asking the Court to order Google to 22 shut down the snippet view portion of the Google books 23 Website? 24 Yes, because they're violating copyright and 25 putting them up there using material that is mine and

6 other authors without permission. 1 2 0. If the Court were to order Google to shut down the snippet view portion of the Google books Website, 3 4 would that benefit you personally? 5 I have no way of knowing. Why is that? 6 Q. 7 Because the way Google distributes it to libraries is wide use elsewhere. Google has given our 8 9 property to other libraries without permission. 10 Other than giving copies of books to libraries, what other conduct do you understand to be at issue in 11 12 this case? 13 I think that's it. Well, the snippets and the Α. -- giving the books to libraries. Thirdly, the physical 14 act of making these books in digital form. 15 16 And you understand if I refer to the process of 17 taking a physical book and turning it into digital form 18 as "scanning." Is that a term you're familiar with? 19 Α. Yes, I am. 20 Other than scanning books, providing copies to 21 libraries and displaying snippets, do you understand any 22 other conduct to be at issue in this litigation? 23 I think there's a severe security issue Α. involved here. 24 25 What security issue is that? 0.

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

7 Google professes to have safeguards against invasion of these libraries. I view that with a great deal of suspicion. 0. Why do you view that with suspicion? Α. 'Cause I read almost daily in the interest of hacking in supposedly secure databases, including those run by the United States Government, the military and intelligence organizations. So your concern is that through hacking copies of your books could be disclosed? Yes. Α. MR. BONI: Object to form. BY MR. GRATZ: Other than your concern about hacking, are there other security concerns that you understand to be the subject of this lawsuit? MR. BONI: Object to form. Your original question, Joe, was directed to him and what he thought. Now you're talking about the lawsuit. You can answer the question. Joe, I just want it to be clear that you shifted gears. Well, what particularly strikes me about Google pilfering of our property and putting into digital form is that these digital books are gonna be put in

university libraries; I think eight or ten of them by

8 1 From what I read in the press, there are students 2 who consider a closed archive a challenge to which they 3 can hack. And putting digital books on a college 4 library is -- makes about as much sense as having an 5 open bar in an AA meeting. BY MR. GRATZ: 6 7 Ο. And why is that? 8 It's there. They're gonna try to get in there, 9 and they'll do it. 10 ο. And what would their goal be? Object to form. Who's "they"? 11 MR. BONI: 12 I don't know. I can probably sit around and Α. 13 make up something. The fact that they're doing it is 14 violation enough. 15 BY MR. GRATZ: 16 And in your -- when you say "the fact that 17 they're doing it, " do you mean the libraries or Google? 18 MR. BONI: Object to form. 19 Google has created the libraries to pass on to the -- the digital library to pass on to the 20 21 universities. The universities would not have this --22 these digital books for it not for Google. 23 BY MR. GRATZ: 24 And do you personally object to the possession 25 of digital books by university libraries?

19 1 times had you spoken to Mr. Boni? 2 Α. I wouldn't estimate. 3 What documents have you reviewed in relation to 0. 4 this case? 5 MR. BONI: Let me object to the form of the 6 You can answer if you can. question. 7 This might be slow. The final amended pleading by the plaintiffs. The plaintiffs' motion for 8 9 certification of class action, Google's response, your 10 request for documents, the deposition of the Jim Booten. A paper called the declaration of Joanne Zack. 11 The 12 judge's refusal of the first class action settlement. 13 And I've also, online, reviewed various things that 14 Google had to say about its library project. 15 BY MR. GRATZ: 16 Anything else? 0. 17 Α. Not that I recall. 18 And the documents that you referred to in your 0. 19 previous answer, when did you -- when did you review 20 those documents? 21 In the last month or the last six weeks. 22 Other than the documents you have reviewed in Ο. 23 the last six weeks, are there any other documents that 24 you've reviewed in connection with this case? 25 I reviewed the original copyright for "The Α.

- Superlawyers," also reviewed various letters that publishers sent to my agent, Carl Brandt, reverting rights to me.
- Q. And those were documents that you provided to Mr. Boni to be produced in discovery; is that right?
- A. Yes. The chain went from Brandt to me to Mr. Boni.
- Q. Out of the documents that Mr. Brandt sent to you in relation to this matter, were there any that you withheld and did not send to Mr. Boni?
- 11 A. No.

- Q. Other than the documents that you've reviewed in the last six weeks and the documents that you provided to Mr. Boni for production, are there any other documents that you've reviewed in connection with this lawsuit?
- A. Yes. Thinking back, before the settlement was proposed, I was sent by Authors Guild a draft of the proposed settlement, and I reviewed that, and I was asked to comment on that.
 - Q. Did you comment on that?
- A. I don't recall. I remember reading it and may have made a suggestion, but what it was, I don't remember at this date.
 - Q. Did you have any meetings regarding the

21 1 settlement agreement? 2 Α. No, all done telephone. Did you have any telephone conversations 3 Q. 4 regarding the settlement agreement? 5 With the Authors Guild, yes. 6 Q. How many? 7 Three, four, five. Α. About how long did each one last? 8 Q. 9 Object to form. MR. BONI: You can answer. 10 I'd say anywhere from five minutes to 15, 20 A. 11 minutes. 12 BY MR. GRATZ: 13 Who was on those phone calls? Q. 14 A woman lawyer from Authors Guild. Α. 15 Q. Do you recall the name of that lawyer? 16 Α. No, I do not. 17 Q. Anyone else? Memory tells me I discussed it with Mr. Dickson 18 Α. 19 at the time. 20 And was that on the same phone call as with the 21 Authors Guild? 22 This is independent. Α. No. 23 And the phone call with the Authors Guild, was Q. it just you and a lawyer with the -- from the Authors 24 25 Guild?

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

22 It was someone from the Authors Guild. gonna assume it was a lawyer, but it was someone from Authors Guild. It was familiar with the -- pardon me. Let me get a drink of this. It was someone familiar with the terms. Do you remember if it was a man or a woman? My recollection it was a man. Pardon me. woman. Was it the same person during each conversation? No. Α. You said there were between three and five of Q. these conversations? I would estimate. That's a long time ago. Other than those conversations and reviewing 0. the documents that you have reviewed in the last six weeks and reviewing the documents that were provided to Mr. Boni to be produced during discovery, have you had any other involvement in the progress of the litigation? Yes, I have. Α. MR. BONI: Object to the form of the question. You can answer. Α. Yes. BY MR. GRATZ:

What's that?

0.

- A. Mr. Dickson has been intimately involved in this, talking to the Authors Guild and being sort of central point to gather information. I talked to him on an ongoing basis about it.
 - Q. Was anyone else on these calls?
- A. No. These were person-to-person calls. We're good friends, have been since 1967. We talk a lot.
- Q. About how many times would you estimate you've discussed the litigation with Mr. Dickson?
- A. I cannot even give you a ballpark figure. We see one another frequently, and it came up sometimes and sometimes it didn't. No way I can answer that.
- Q. Do you understand Mr. Dickson is no longer a plaintiff in this case?
 - A. I'm aware of that.
 - O. Do you know why?

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

23

24

25

MR. BONI: I'll caution you. You can give a general response without getting into detail, and the reason I say that, Joe, is because it does involve an element of attorney work product, and so it's for that reason I'm cautioning the witness to be guided by that.

22 I will let the witness give a --

THE WITNESS: Go off the record?

MR. BONI: -- general response.

MR. GRATZ: Sure.

24 1 (Whereupon, discussion was held off the 2 record.) 3 THE WITNESS: Give me your question again. 4 I just want to note a MR. GRATZ: Sure. 5 discussion was had between counsel off the record regarding the level of detail necessary for the 6 7 witness's answer. 8 BY MR. GRATZ: 9 So my question, again, was: Do you know why Mr. Dickson is no longer a plaintiff in this case? 10 11 Α. Yes, I do know. 12 Why is that? 0. Because serious medical condition of two very 13 Α. close members of his family. 14 15 Q. Do you know if there's any other reason? I don't know. I think that's damn well 16 17 sufficient. 18 Not saying that it isn't. 0. 19 Would you say you got most of your information 20 about the progress of the litigation from Mr. Dickson? Most -- yeah, probably say I kept current on 21 22 it, like a current bulletin. 23 Do you know whether Mr. Dickson had similar Q. 24 conversations with others? 25 MR. BONI: Object to form. You mean other

25 1 named plaintiffs? 2 BY MR. GRATZ: 3 Q. Anyone else? I have been in situations where he discussed 4 Α. 5 that with other writers. 6 Do you know whether Mr. Dickson had similar 7 discussions with other named plaintiffs? 8 Α. I'm sorry? Do you know whether Mr. Dickson had similar 9 0. 10 discussions with other named plaintiffs? 11 Α. I don't know. 12 What's your role in this litigation? Q. 13 Representative of the class plaintiffs. Α. 14 ο. Are you also in this litigation to represent your own interests? 15 16 Α. Yes. 17 Did you review the Complaint in this case before it was originally filed? 18 Yes, I did. 19 Α. 20 Did you make any comments on it? ο. 21 Not that I recall. Α. 22 Are you a lawyer, Mr. Goulden? ο. 23 No, I'm not. Α. 24 Who makes decisions about the direction of the 0. 25 litigation?

26 1 MR. BONI: Object to form. You can answer. 2 A. I think the lawyers do with input considered -by the lawyers with input -- pardon me. I'm tonque tied 3 today. From the lawyers with input requested by the 4 5 lawyers who are handling the case. BY MR. GRATZ: 6 7 Who decides what positions to take in 0. 8 litigation? 9 Object to form. MR. BONI: I think ultimately the lawyers do, guided by 10 11 the wishes of the lead plaintiffs. 12 BY MR. GRATZ: 13 Q. What do you base your understanding of that on? 14 MR. BONI: Object to form of his previous 15 response. BY MR. GRATZ: 16 17 What do you base your -- on what do you base your previous response? 18 Watching the way the litigation has progressed. 19 Α. 20 Q. Have you provided -- strike that. Are you being paid for your participation in 21 22 this case? Α. 23 I'm sorry. I can't... 24 0. Are you being paid for your participation in 25 this case?

27 1 No. Α. 2 Q. What do you understand Mr. Boni's role to be in 3 the litigation? From what I've observed, he's lead counsel in 4 5 this case along with Ms. Zack. And Mr. Boni and Ms. Zack make the decisions 6 Q. 7 about when -- what to say in their papers, for example? 8 MR. BONI: Object to form. 9 To get into that, would have to get into the conversation between me and Mr. Boni. 10 I'm not gonna go into lawyer discussions. 11 12 BY MR. GRATZ: Do you know whether any of the other named 13 14 plaintiffs have provided input to Mr. Boni regarding how 15 the litigation should be conducted? 16 Object to form. MR. BONI: 17 The only litigant I know personally is Mr. Dickson, and I understand he was talking to Mr. Boni 18 19 before his problems arose. 20 BY MR. GRATZ: 21 Q. Anyone else? 22 Not that I know of. Α. 23 Q. Have you provided input to Mr. Boni regarding 24 how he should litigate this case? I think you're getting into conversations of my 25 Α.

28 1 attorney there. 2 Q. Are you withholding information based on the attorney-client privilege? 3 4 Α. Yes. 5 MR. BONI: I think you can answer that 6 question. Joe, repeat the question. I think it can be 7 answered with a "yes" or "no." MR. GRATZ: 8 Sure. BY MR. GRATZ: 9 10 Have you provided input to Mr. Boni regarding how he should litigate this case? 11 12 MR. BONI: Object to the form of that question. 13 I will let you answer the question with a "yes" or --14 Α. Yes. 15 BY MR. GRATZ: 16 About how many times? 17 MR. BONI: Joe, we've really gone over this. From 2006 until today, you want to know how many times 18 19 what? I mean --20 I cannot begin to answer that. 21 BY MR. GRATZ: 22 Q. Why not? 23 I simply don't jot down on my calendar Α. 24 everybody I talked to every day. My memory at age 77 is 25 not all that keen, as you might discover in another 50

29 1 years. What was your involvement with respect to the 2 ο. proposed settlement? Strike that. 3 Do you recall there was a settlement proposed 4 in this litigation? 5 6 You mean the earlier settlement? Α. 7 Yes. Q. Yes, I was aware of it. 8 Α. 9 Q. What were, in rough terms, the terms of this 10 settlement? 11 It was so complex that I'm still having trouble figuring it out. I read it again the other night, and 12 13 essentially it was striking the business deal between 14 the authors and Google for the authors' share 15 financially in any proceeds that Google earned, and also 16 I think it had a proposal that Google would get 17 copyright permission before they would digitize books. 18 Now, again, though, this all happened a long 19 time ago, and I'd say it was very confusing to me, the 20 settlement. Would you say that you fully understand the --21 Q. all the terms of the settlement agreement? 22 23 MR. BONI: Object to form. You can answer. 24 The current one, no. 25 BY MR. GRATZ:

34 1 BY MR. GRATZ: 2 Q. Anything else? 3 I perhaps discussed that with Mr. Dickson. Α. 4 Anything else? Q. That's all I recall. 5 Α. Did you read the text of the settlement 6 Q. 7 agreement itself? 8 Α. Yes, I did. Did you think that it was a fair settlement? 9 Q. 10 No, I did not. Settlement, yes. I thought the Α. 11 settlement was very fair. 12 Q. In your previous answer, you said that you 13 thought something wasn't fair. What were you referring 14 to? 15 Object to form. MR. BONI: You can answer. 16 I'm trying to think what it was I thought was 17 unfair. I think I thought some of the opinion was 18 unfair, not the settlement itself. 19 BY MR. GRATZ: 20 The Judge Chin opinion? Q. 21 Yes, I do. Α. 22 And what parts were those? Q. 23 I think he was overly concerned with authors Α. not being represented, whereas I felt then and I still 24 25 feel that any author who seeks protection of the

35 copyright laws is covered. If he wants to get out of 1 2 the case at a later point, he can always opt out. Anything else? 3 ο. Α. I think that's it. 4 Why do you think that Judge Chin was overly 5 0. concerned with authors not being represented? 6 7 MR. BONI: Object to form. Α. I don't try to read the minds of 8 I don't know. 9 federal judges. 10 BY MR. GRATZ: Did you agree with all of the terms of the 11 settlement that was rejected by Judge Chin? 12 13 As far as I remember them, I do. Α. Do you know there were objections to the 14 ο. settlement from some authors? 15 16 Α. I read that. 17 Q. Have you reviewed any of those objections? No, I have not. I read about it in general 18 Α. 19 terms. I've not looked at any specific filings with the 20 Court. Read about it in the newspaper, for example? 21 Q. 22 Yeah. Α. 23 What were the grounds of those objections? Q. 24 MR. BONI: Object to form. 25 From what I read in the press, seems to be that Α.

36 academics who wanted to make wide use of the Google 1 2 holdings. BY MR. GRATZ: 3 4 Q. Anything else? 5 Α. That's all that -- that's the main point I 6 recall. 7 Do you think that you agreeing to the 0. 8 settlement adequately represented those authors who 9 objected? 10 Α. Yes. 11 ο. Why is that? 12 Because anyone who enjoys the protection of the Α. 13 copyright laws sought that out, that was a voluntary submission of their rights, for approval of their 14 rights, so, therefore, they should be included with 15 16 everybody else as a class. 17 Now, if they do not like the settlement, they can always opt out of it. 18 19 Q. Do you think their objections were sincerely 20 held? 21 MR. BONI: Object to form. 22 I can't read the mind of an academic either. Α. 23 BY MR. GRATZ: 24 Have you spoken with any of the authors who 25 objected to the settlement?

A. I'm trying to put this when and where this happened. I was at a conference down at Virginia Military Institute. I talked to a professor there of another college who was attending and somehow the conversation got around to the Google suit, and he said simply that he felt that anything in print should be available for general public without resort to things like copyright.

In other words, if it existed, he should be able to download it and use it. Needless to say, I disagreed with him.

- Q. Do you remember who that was?
- A. A man from Western Kentucky University. His name, I do not recall. He was a political science teacher.
- Q. Other than the political science professor from Western Kentucky University, have you spoken with any of the other authors who objected to the settlement?
 - A. Not that I recall.

Q. Do you know why the objectors who objected to the settlement took the view that they did?

MR. BONI: Object to form.

A. As I said before, they want the unlimited use of the Internet or material on the Internet regardless of who owns it.

49 1 knowing. 2 BY MR. GRATZ: 3 ο. Do you think it's likely or unlikely? 4 MR. BONI: Object to form. 5 As I said, I have no way of knowing. Α. 6 BY MR. GRATZ: 7 Do all class members share your view that 8 Google's scanning and display of snippets is something 9 that's objectionable? 10 MR. BONI: Object to form. 11 The writers I know without exception are 12 covered -- enjoy the protection of the copyright 13 statute. The fact that they or their publisher gets the 14 copyright protection suggests to me that they wish to be 15 protected. 16 BY MR. GRATZ: 17 So you don't think there are any class members 18 who don't object to Google's scanning and display of 19 snippets? 20 MR. BONI: Object to form. That 21 mischaracterizes the testimony. 22 I have no way of knowing. 23 BY MR. GRATZ: 24 Q. Have you spoken with any? 25 Asked and answered. MR. BONI:

50 I've not raised the index question with any 1 Α. other writers. 2 BY MR. GRATZ: 3 Other than Mr. Dickson and others who were at 4 some time a named plaintiff in this case, have you 5 spoken with other writers who do object to Google's 6 7 scanning and snippet display? 8 Over the years, yes. Α. 9 Q. About how many? This is a guesstimate. 10 Α. 20, 30. 11 Did they say why they objected to Google's Q. 12 scanning program? 13 For the same reason I do. They -- Google is 14 stealing things that don't belong to Google for 15 commercial purposes. Do you think there are any authors who would be 16 17 harmed if the Court ordered Google to shut down the snippet display feature of Google books? 18 19 MR. BONI: Object to the form. 20 Α. Have no way of knowing. 21 BY MR. GRATZ: 22 Have any of your out-of-print books come back Q. 23 into print? 24 Α. Yes. 25 What books are those? Q.

59 1 co-author "The News Manipulators" contributed within the 2 scope of your employment at Accuracy in Media? Yes, it was. 3 Α. Are all of your books nonfiction? 4 0. 5 Α. Yes. What is the purpose for which you wrote your 6 Q. 7 books? 8 MR. BONI: Object to form. 9 To make a living and to satisfy my long-time 10 desire to be a writer. 11 BY MR. GRATZ: 12 Are your books works of journalism? Q. 13 MR. BONI: Object to form. 14 A. No. 15 BY MR. GRATZ: 16 You have written works of journalism; is that 17 right? 18 I was a newspaperman for ten years. Α. 19 What is the difference between your books and 0. 20 what you consider journalism? 21 Α. Journalism seems to be sort of -- it's not 22 the in-depth research that you would do for a book. 23 There's a difference between what I write and what is 24 called journalism. 25 Because the depth of research, for example,

EXHIBIT 6

1	SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK		
2	THE AUTHORS GUILD, INC., et al.,		
3	PLAINTIFFS,		
5	-against- Case No:		
6	05CV8136 (DC)		
7	GOOGLE INC.,		
8	DEFENDANT.		
9	X		
10	DATE: January 4, 2012		
11	TIME: 1:05 P.M.		
12			
13			
14	DEPOSITION of a Plaintiff, BETTY MILES, taken		
15	by the Defendants, pursuant to a Notice and to the		
16	Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, held at the offices of		
17	MILBERG, LLP, One Pennsylvania Plaza, New York, New York		
18	10119, before Deborah Garzaniti, a Notary Public of the		
19	State of New York.		
20			
21 22			
22			
24			
25			

5

1	Δ	Yes.
∸	7.7 •	100.

- Q. So I will ask while we are here today, I
- 3 want to have a conversation with you, but she also has
- 4 to write down everything that we are saying. We should
- 5 not talk over each other. We should say yes and no
- 6 rather than nodding.
- 7 A. Okay, yes.
- Q. And it is a little warm in here and it is
- 9 a cold day. I know you have come a long way. If you
- 10 need to take a break at any point, let me know.
- 11 A. Thank you.
- 12 Q. You are here because you are a Plaintiff
- 13 in a lawsuit against Google; is that right?
- 14 A. That's right.
- 15 Q. What is the lawsuit about?
- 16 A. The lawsuit is about whether or not
- 17 Google has the right to have control of my copyrighted
- 18 books and those of all of the other authors that I
- 19 represent.
- Q. What do you mean by control?
- 21 A. I mean being able to do what I want with
- 22 my own copyrighted books, that is to earn money from
- 23 them, to sell rights to them.
- Q. What is Google doing that is interfering
- 25 with those rights?

- 1 A. It is taking control of those rights
- 2 without asking me whether it has permission to do so.
- 3 Q. What are you asking the Court to do about
- 4 that?
- 5 A. To ask permission of me and all of the
- 6 other authors that I represent before doing something
- 7 with the books, which have their own copyright, and also
- 8 to pay damages for the books that they have already
- 9 taken over, \$750.
- 10 Q. What is Google doing that you object to?
- 11 A. It is not asking my permission as a
- 12 copyright holder for anything that it is doing,
- 13 specifically putting quote snippets from the books on
- 14 the website and sending a copy of a digitized book back
- 15 to the libraries from which they are cooperating with it
- 16 in this time.
- 17 Q. You mentioned the objection to Google not
- 18 having asked permission?
- 19 A. Yes.
- Q. If Google had asked your permission
- 21 before scanning your book and displaying snippets, what
- 22 would your response have been?
- MR. BONI: Objection to the form. You can
- 24 answer. I am placing an objection into the record.
- THE WITNESS: Okay.

B. MILES

- A. It is not the problem of my books. It is
- 2 the problem of the principle of doing this for all
- 3 books.
- 4 Q. So apart from your desire that Google
- 5 Books be changed with respect to all books, you don't
- 6 have a particular desire to have your own books removed?
- 7 MR. BONI: It mischaracterizes the testimony.
- 8 I object to the form.
- 9 A. I mean I care about -- this is something
- 10 that I care about. I care about it for my own books, of
- 11 course they are my own books, I care about it for all
- 12 authors' books.
- Q. But you haven't asked Google to remove?
- A. No, well, except as this claim is asking.
- 15 Q. Do you want Google to remove your books
- 16 from Google Books?
- 17 A. Yes.
- Q. What is your role in this litigation?
- 19 A. My role is to stand for all other authors
- 20 and to be aware of the gist of the claim and to approve
- 21 of that, yes.
- Q. When did your involvement in this
- 23 litigation begin?
- 24 A. Back when the original -- I guess that
- 25 was 2005.

- 1 Q. Do you have a written engagement
- 2 agreement with the law firm of Boni & Zack?
- 3 A. No.
- 4 Q. Do you have a written engagement
- 5 agreement with the law firm of Milberg LLP?
- 6 A. No.
- 7 Q. Do you have a written engagement
- 8 agreement with the Authors Guild as your lawyers?
- 9 A. No.
- 10 Q. And the Authors Guild and the staff of
- 11 the Authors Guild is not acting as your lawyer; is that
- 12 right?
- A. No, not at all.
- Q. Do you understand that there was
- 15 previously a proposed settlement in this case?
- 16 A. Yes, I do.
- 17 Q. What do you think of that settlement?
- 18 A. I can't really talk about the
- 19 technicalities of that. I know that Judge Chin asked
- 20 the parties to -- no, I don't, I don't.
- 21 MR. BONI: Do you mean as she is sitting here
- 22 today or when she was discussing it at the time of the
- 23 settlement?
- Q. As you sit here today?
- 25 A. Well, I understand what today's claim is

- 1 about, yes.
- Q. Did you read the settlement agreement?
- 3 A. Yes.
- Q. Did you think it was a fair settlement?
- 5 A. Yes.
- Q. Were there any elements of the settlement
- 7 agreement that, and this a yes or no question, were
- 8 there any elements of the settlement agreement that you
- 9 thought were unfair?
- 10 A. No.
- 11 Q. Do you think that you adequately
- 12 represented all of the class members in agreeing to the
- 13 settlement?
- 14 MR. BONI: Object to the form. You can
- 15 answer the question.
- 16 A. I think so.
- Q. Did you know that there were objections
- 18 to the settlement from authors?
- 19 A. I do.
- Q. What were the grounds of those
- 21 objections?
- 22 A. There were some from another author
- 23 group, I forget what else.
- Q. Do you remember anything else about the
- 25 objections?

- 1 A. No.
- Q. Do you think you adequately represented
- 3 those authors who objected?
- A. I think I adequately represented the
- 5 majority of authors.
- Q. But there are some who take a different
- 7 view?
- A. I know that from reading, yes.
- 9 Q. With respect to them, do you think you
- 10 are an adequate representative?
- 11 MR. BONI: Object to the form. It would be
- 12 helpful to establish what adequate representative means.
- 13 It is very vague, the question.
- 14 A. I do think I can speak for all authors.
- 15 I think when this claim is settled, all authors are
- 16 likely to be happy with the kind of outcome we are
- 17 hoping for.
- 18 Q. What outcome are you hoping for?
- 19 A. We are hoping that each author will have
- 20 control of the rights to his or her book and some
- 21 negatives, that these books will not be in the program
- 22 that send the digitized copies of a book to libraries.
- Q. Anything else?
- A. And financial settlement.
- Q. Do you think that the financial terms of

- 1 the proposed settlement were fair?
- 2 A. Yes.
- 3 Q. But the authors are now asking for a
- 4 different amount of money than was in the settlement, is
- 5 that your understanding?
- A. I don't know.
- 7 Q. Thinking back to the proposed settlement,
- 8 were you in charge of deciding what its terms should be?
- 9 A. No.
- 10 O. Who was?
- 11 A. That's a group of people, not whom I am
- 12 one.
- Q. Did you have the independent ability to
- 14 reject the settlement?
- 15 A. No. I am not a lawyer.
- 16 Q. Turning to a different topic in 2011,
- 17 just by category, what were your sources of income?
- 18 A. Royalties. Well, Social Security, right,
- 19 pension, TIAA. Do you know that?
- 20 Q. Yes.
- 21 A. And royalties from my own books and
- 22 royalties from my late husband's books.
- Q. What is your late husband's name?
- A. Matthew B. Miles.
- 25 Q. Is your pension related to your work at

- 1 Q. This is an article by Katie Hafner,
- 2 headlined At Harvard, a Man, a Plan and a Scanner; is
- 3 that right?
- 4 A. Yes.
- 5 Q. This is an article that you clipped from
- 6 the newspaper; is that right?
- 7 MR. BONI: We produced this in the first
- 8 production six years ago, five or six years ago.
- 9 A. I intend to clip things, yes.
- 10 Q. Do you maintain clipping files of
- 11 interesting articles?
- 12 A. Yes, I do.
- Q. What led you to clip this article?
- 14 A. I have been clipping articles about the
- 15 Google case from the beginning because I am very
- 16 invested in this. My opinion on this has been sought
- 17 and given and I feel that my role in this case is to
- 18 weigh in on issues around it, so it is important to me
- 19 to keep up with. I mean this is an early one, but I
- 20 read it, not just in the Times, in the New York review
- 21 of books. This is important to me because I feel I am
- 22 really representing authors who want to control their
- 23 rights and I am concerned that I will weigh in sensibly
- 24 and be aware and my opinion bears some weight.
- 25 Q. Turning to the second page of Exhibit 13.

- 1 A. This is going to be an article from quite
- 2 far back. I am not going to remember.
- MR. BONI: He didn't ask you a question.
- 4 Just answer.
- 5 A. I am turning to page two.
- 6 Q. In the first column in the last full
- 7 paragraph.
- 8 A. Yes.
- 9 Q. That paragraph ends, "The thing that
- 10 consoles me, "Mr. Verba said, "is Google's notion of
- 11 showing only the snippets, which have everything to do
- 12 with what's in the book, but nothing to do with reading
- 13 the book."
- Do you understand what Mr. Verba means by
- 15 that?
- 16 A. I do.
- Q. Do you agree?
- 18 A. No.
- 19 Q. What is your disagreement?
- 20 A. Well, can you say it again? Where is it?
- MR. BONI: Down here (indicating).
- 22 A. Okay.
- 23 Q. It has been indicated to you. Do you see
- 24 it now?
- A. I know. You told me.

- 1 MR. BONI: I just marked it. I am sorry.
- 2 MR. GRATZ: Let the record reflect that the
- 3 exhibit has been marked at the place where I was talking
- 4 about.
- 5 A. I see it, but he is not.
- Q. Go ahead.
- 7 A. No, you ask me.
- Q. What were you about to say I am tempted
- 9 to ask.
- 10 You said that you disagreed with what Verba
- 11 is saying here?
- 12 A. I didn't say that.
- Q. Do you agree that Google's notion of
- 14 showing only the snippets, which has everything to do
- 15 with what's in the book, but nothing to do with reading
- 16 the book?
- 17 A. It is that this doesn't summarize what
- 18 this claim is about to me.
- 19 Q. What does it leave out?
- A. It leaves out, and this was in 19 --
- 21 anyway, this was early on and it leaves out the whole
- 22 point of the Google Books being scanned and copies being
- 23 given to libraries and nothing is being said about that.
- 24 It is inadequate. It is one man's opinion of a
- 25 particular part of this issue.

- 1 A. In the Author Guild's bulletin?
- 2 Q. Yes.
- A. Yes, there were.
- 4 Q. Were those articles provided to your
- 5 Counsel as part of discovery in this case?
- A. I have no idea.
- 7 MR. BONI: We are not maintaining privilege
- 8 as to those, Joe.
- 9 MR. GRATZ: But they haven't been produced?
- MR. BONI: No.
- MR. GRATZ: Nothing further.
- MR. BONI: I just have a question or two.
- 13 EXAMINATION BY
- 14 MR. BONI:
- 15 Q. You were just asked among the documents
- 16 you were shown was the notice with respect to the
- 17 settlement agreement in the case; is that correct?
- 18 A. Yes.
- 19 Q. Did you weigh in with respect to the
- 20 settlement agreement?
- 21 A. Yes, I did.
- Q. You testified earlier about royalty
- 23 income with respect to your late husband. What type of
- 24 author was your husband?
- 25 A. He was an academic author. He wrote

94

B. MILES

- 1 textbooks.
- 2 Q. You were asked earlier about academic
- 3 authors and whether you can fairly represent or I think
- 4 the word was adequately represent academic authors. Do
- 5 you believe that you can?
- 6 A. Very much so.
- 7 Q. Why is that?
- 8 A. Well, not only in my husband's case, but
- 9 many of his colleagues. I know a great many academics,
- 10 as I know a great many plain authors and I know that no
- 11 matter what kind of book they are writing, they are all
- 12 concerned about their copyright and the rights of
- 13 holders of copyright to control their books.
- MR. BONI: I have no further questions.
- 15 Thank you.
- 16 CONTINUED EXAMINATION BY
- 17 MR. GRATZ:
- Q. One or two questions.
- 19 With respect to your husband's books, were
- 20 they all textbooks?
- 21 A. Yes, they were published by Sage
- 22 Publications, which is essentially a text house in the
- 23 social sciences essentially, yes.
- Q. The publishing contracts with respect to
- 25 those textbooks, did they provide for that your late

DIAMOND REPORTING, INC. - info@diamondreporting.com 718.624.7200

EXHIBIT 7

ase 1:05-cv-08136-DC Document 1010-2 Filed 04/03/12 Page 55 of 96

OMPANY EPORTERS

CONFIDENTIAL **CERTIFIED COPY**

IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK

THE AUTHORS GUILD, INC.,)		
Associational Plaintiff, BETTY)		
MILES, JOSEPH GOULDEN, and JIM)		
BOUTON, on behalf of themselves)		4
and all other similarly situated,)		
)		
Plaintiffs,)		
)	Civil	Action No.
Vs.)	05 CV	8136 (DC)
)		
GOOGLE INC.,)		
)		
Defendant.)		
)		

HIGHLY CONFIDENTIAL - SUBJECT TO PROTECTIVE ORDER

DEPOSITION OF: DANIEL CLANCY

TAKEN ON:

February 10, 2012

13042

A648

BRENDA L. MARSHALL CSR No. 6939

Los Angeles

San Francisco

Pages 96-99, 140-41 and 182-87 of the deposition of Daniel Clancy will be filed under seal

```
1
                             DANIEL CLANCY,
        2
                        a Witness having been duly
        3
                       sworn, testified as follows:
        4
                               EXAMINATION
        5
        6
           BY MS. ZACK:
        7
               0.
                    Okay. Could you state your name and
        8
           address for the record.
        9
               Α.
                    Yes. Daniel J. Clancy,
       10
09:18:57
                            REDACTED
       11
               Q.
                    And you work for Google; right?
       12
                    Yes.
               Α.
       13
               Q.
                    And what's your current position?
       14
               Α.
                    Current position is director of
09:19:07
       15
           engineering for YouTube.
       16
               0.
                    When did you join Google?
       17
               Α.
                    I joined Google in January 2005.
       18
               Q.
                    Okay. And what was your first position?
       19
               Α.
                    My first position was engineering
09:19:19
       20
           director for Google Books.
       21
                    And how long did you have that position?
               Q.
       22
               Α.
                    I kept that role till June of last year.
       23
           2011.
       24
                    Okay. So six and a half years, you were
               Q.
       25
           an engineering director for Google Books?
09:19:40
```

6

310.322.7700

~ 415.956.6405

```
1
        2
        3
        4
09:19:53
        5
        6
                               REDACTED
        7
        8
        9
       10
09:20:10
       11
       12
               Q.
                   Okay. As engineering director for
           Google Books, how would you describe that
       13
           position?
       14
       15
                    I was responsible for directing the
09:20:26
       16
           engineering team that developed the technology
       17
           for Google Books back-end servers, and I also
           was heavily involved in strategy and other --
        18
        19
           other issues involving Google Books.
                    When you say "strategy," what do you
       20
09:20:49
               Q.
       21
           mean?
       22
                    I mean decisions about the product and
           the -- and the directions we would be going with
       23
       24
           the product, and I was involved heavily in
           our -- in our library partnerships.
       25
09:21:05
```

```
Yes.
         1
                Α.
         2
                Q.
                   And did someone take over Jim Gerber's
         3
            role?
         4
                    Yes. Tom Turvey.
                Α.
                    And who is the current product counsel
         5
                Ο.
09:52:04
         6
            for Google Books?
                    I'm not sure. There have been a few
         7
                Α.
         8
            changes lately.
                    So on February 7, 2012, three days ago,
         9
            right, you signed this declaration; is that
 09:52:47
        10
        11
            correct?
                A. Yes.
         12
                    Okay. And paragraph 4, you say, "Google
         13
            has scanned more than twenty million books as
         14
            part of Google Books"; correct?
         15
 09:53:02
         16
                Α.
                    Correct.
                     Did you review any documents to make
         17
            that assertion?
         18
                     I -- I reviewed our dashboard that
         19
                Α.
            keeps -- verifies the number of books.
 09:53:21
         20
         21
                Q. So you know this case is not about
            public domain books; right?
         22
         23
                Α.
                    Yes.
         24
                Q. And you understand this case is about
 09:53:37
         25
            in-copyright books; right?
```

1 Α. Yes. So this 20 million books includes --2 Q. 3 that you put in the affidavit or declaration refers to both public domain and copyright? 5 Α. Yes. 09:53:48 6 Q. And the number of in-copyright books 7 scanned, as you previously testified, is 8 approximately what? Sixteen or 17 million? 9 So with our Partner Program, we scanned 10 approximately 3 million. And here, I say 2.5. 09:54:14 And these are estimates. And then the estimate 11 12 of the number of public domain books is very 13 approximate. 14 So I think in terms of in copyright, including Partner Program books and non Partner 15 09:54:36 Program books, the estimate of about 16 million 16 would be a rough estimate. 17 Sixteen million? 18 Ο. 19 Α. That includes our Partner Program books. 20 Ο. Right. So would it be correct to --09:54:48 21 and -- to say that in the public -- there are no 22 Partner Program books that are public domain 23 books? 24 To be precise, there are Partner Program 09:55:06 25 books that are -- the work is in the public

MILLER & COMPANY REPORTERS

```
1
           domain, but the book they provide to us may also
        2
           include copyrighted material, such as Topsetter.
        3
               Q.
                   We'll consider that an in-copyright book
        4
           for purposes of this discussion. Okay?
                   Yes.
09:55:21
        5
               Α.
        6
               Q. But -- and you're not considering those
        7
           types of books within the approximately four or
        8
           so million public domain books; correct?
        9
               Α.
                   Correct.
                   So of the 16 million in-copyright books
       10
09:55:32
               Q.
       11
           that Google has scanned, if we subtract the
       12
           approximately 3 million from the Partner
           Program, we're left with 13 million. Simple
       13
       14
           math. Is that correct?
                  That is correct.
09:55:51
       15
               Α.
       16
               Q.
                   Okay.
       17
                   And remember that my estimate for the
               Α.
        18
           public domain was very broad. It was 4 to 6
           million.
        19
                      So --
09:55:58
       20
               Ο.
                    I understand.
        21
               Α.
                    Yes.
        22
                    So it could be 11 to 13 million?
               Q.
        23
               Α.
                    And these are books that may be in
        24
           copyright.
09:56:06
        25
               Q.
                    Eleven to 13 million books that Google
```

32

310.322.7700

~ 415.956.6405

```
is treating as in copyright?
        1
        2
                   That we are not displaying the full text
               Α.
        3
           for.
                   Because you don't want to be sued for
               Q.
        4
09:56:23
           copyright infringement?
        5
        6
                   MS. DURIE: Objection. Argumentative.
           BY MS. ZACK:
        7
               Q. Is that right?
        8
        9
                   MS. DURIE: Wait. Wait. Objection.
           Argumentative. Calls for, potentially, a legal
09:56:29
       10
       11
           conclusion and attorney-client privileged
       12
           information.
                   So don't answer to the extent that the
       13
       14
           answer would necessarily implicate
       15
           communications with counsel. If you have a
09:56:41
           nonprivileged basis on which to answer the
       16
           question, you can.
       17
                   THE WITNESS: Yeah. I don't think we
       18
       19
           have a nonprivileged basis on which to answer
           the question.
09:56:50
       20
       21
           BY MS. ZACK:
                   All right. So 11 to 13 million books
       22
               Q.
       23
           that are -- that were scanned in libraries;
           right? Correct?
       24
09:57:05
       25
               Α.
                   Yes.
```

310.322.7700

MILLER & COMPANY REPORTERS 33

~ 415.956.6405 ~ 800.487.6278

www.millerreporters.com A655

```
1
                    And Google is treating -- showing only
                O.
         2
            snippets?
         3
                    MS. DURIE: Objection. Mischaracterizes
         4
            the witness's testimony.
         5
09:57:15
                    But you can answer.
                     THE WITNESS: These are books that we
         6
            are showing snippets, and for some of them, we
         7
         8
            do not show snippets.
         9
            BY MS. ZACK:
        10
                    Okay. But you're not -- for each of
 09:57:23
                0.
        11
            these books, you're showing snippets or less?
        12
                    Snippets or less. Correct.
        13
                    And these 11 to 13 million books were
                0.
            copied as part of the Library Project; correct?
        14
 09:57:40
        15
                    These were copied as part of the Library
                Α.
        16
            Project.
        17
                Ο.
                   And that is a term that people at Google
        18
            use; right? The Library Project?
        19
                Α.
                    Yes.
                    And what is your understanding of what
 09:57:48
        2.0
                Q.
        21
            the Library Project is?
        22
                     The Library Project is our initiative
                Α.
        23
            for scanning books that we predominantly obtain
            from libraries, that, again, some are public
        24
 09:58:08
        25
            domain, some may be in copyright, and that we
```

34

310.322.7700

~ 415.956.6405

800.487.6278

A656

```
1
           use for -- to search and index the books to help
        2
           users discover the books, and then we provide
        3
           links to -- of mechanisms to access the books
           either through purchasing them or through a
        4
09:58:27
        5
           library.
        6
               Q.
                   Right. And is there any other part of
        7
           the Library Project?
        8
               Α.
                   I'm not sure what you mean.
        9
                   Well, don't you give digital copies of
           the books back to the libraries?
       10
09:58:37
       11
                        As part of our initiative, we --
               Α.
                   Oh.
           we -- the Library Project, we receive a book
       12
       13
           from the library, overall, it's a process that
       14
           includes the digitization, the indexing, the
       15
           inclusion in Google search index, the providing
09:58:57
       16
           snippets.
       17
                    In addition, libraries receive a copy,
        18
           and with that copy, they may use it for similar
        19
           search and indexing or other nondisplay uses,
09:59:16
       20
           various different research initiatives and,
        21
           also, archiving it for posterity.
        22
                    So 11 to 13 million books have been
        23
           copied by Google in libraries, and as to these
           books, Google treats them as if they were in
        24
        25
           copyright; is that correct?
09:59:48
```

```
1
                   MS. DURIE: Objection. Mischaracterizes
        2
           the witness's testimony.
        3
                   THE WITNESS: We -- as I stated, we
        4
           display snippets or less for these books.
                   MS. ZACK: Okay. Let's mark as
        5
10:00:07
        6
           Plaintiffs' Exhibit 2 a page from Google Books
        7
           Web site.
                    (Whereupon, the document referred to
        8
                   was marked Plaintiffs' Exhibit 2 for
        9
       10
                   identification by the Reporter, a
       11
                   copy of which is attached hereto.)
       12
           BY MS. ZACK:
       13
               0.
                   Have you had a chance to look at this?
       14
               Α.
                   Not prior to you handing it to me.
                    Well, okay. Have you had a chance now?
10:01:14
       15
               Q.
        16
                    Since you handed it to me, yes.
               Α.
        17
                   Have you seen it before?
               Q.
                   Not to my recollection.
        18
               Α.
        19
                    Okay. Did you ever participate in
               Ο.
        20
           drafting materials for the Google Books Web
10:01:27
        21
           site?
                    In general, I was not involved in
        22
               Α.
        23
           proofreading or drafting these materials.
                                                         Ι
        24
           may, at times, have seen something.
                    Okay. Well, this is currently still
10:01:42
        25
               Q.
```

36

310.322.7700

~ 415.956.6405

```
1
             available on Google Books. I'll make that
             representation. At least as of yesterday.
          2
          3
                 Α.
                     Okay.
                 Q.
                     For books that are in snippet form --
                    Uh-huh.
10:01:57
                 Α.
                 Q. -- there's a link, "Why can't I read the
          6
          7
             entire book?" If you click on it, come over to
          8
            this --
                    Yeah.
          9
                 Α.
                 Q. -- it says, "Many of the books in Google
 10:02:03
         10
             Books come from authors and publishers who
         11
         12
            participate in our Partner Program."
                     Is that true?
         13
         1.4
                 Α.
                     Yes.
                     Okay. So -- and that we're talking
  10:02:11
         15
                 Q.
             about approximately 3 million books?
         16
         17
                     Approximately.
         18
                 Q.
                     "For these books, our partners decide
         19
             how much of the book is browsable - anywhere
         20
             from a few sample pages to the whole book."
  10:02:21
         21
                     Is that true?
         22
                 Α.
                     Yes.
         23
                     "Some partners offer the entire book in
             a digital edition through Google eBooks, in
         24
             which case you can purchase the book."
         25
  10:02:37
```

```
Is that true?
        1
        2
                   Yes.
               Α.
        3
               Q.
                   Okay. Then it says, "For books that
           enter Google Books through the Library Project,
           what you see depends on the book's copyright
10:02:46
        6
           status."
        7
                   Is that true?
                   So what you see depends if we -- since
        8
               Α.
           we -- we cannot conclusively determine the
10:02:57
       10
           copyright status of a book, I think this is --
       11
           this is a simplification, and it's to see that
       12
           if we believe a book is in the public domain.
       13
                   Then, as it says later on, "We then
       14
           allow you to access the rest of the book. If we
10:03:15
       15
           are unsure of the copyright status, then we
           display snippets."
       16
       17
                   So is that sentence true or not true?
                   MS. DURIE: Objection.
       18
           BY MS. ZACK:
       19
10:03:26
       20
               0.
                   The first sentence.
                   MS. DURIE: Objection. Argumentative
       21
       22
           and asked and answered.
                   THE WITNESS: I believe I've answered
       23
       24
           the question.
       25
           BY MS. ZACK:
```

38

310.322.7700

~ 415.956.6405

```
1
               0.
                   The second sentence says, "We respect
        2
           copyright law and the tremendous creative effort
        3
           authors put into their work." Is that true?
               Α.
                   Yes.
                   The next sentence says, "If the book is
10:03:41
               Ο.
        6
           in the public domain and therefore out of
        7
           copyright, you can page through the entire book
        8
           and even download it and read it offline."
                   Is that true?
10:03:50
       10
               Α.
                   So if -- it is a simplification. If we
       11
           believe -- if we are confident that a book is in
       12
           the public domain, then this is true. There are
       13
           lots of books in our index that are in the
       14
           public domain where we do not provide this
10:04:09
       15
           access, and so you cannot do this.
       16
                   So the statement "If the book is in the
       17
           public domain," this would be, again, a
           simplification because there are books in the
       18
           public domain for which we do not allow users to
       19
       20
           use this.
10:04:24
       21
               Q.
                  Okay. The next sentence says, "If the
       22
           book is under copyright and the publisher or
       23
           author is not part of the Partner Program, we
       24
           only show basic information about the book,
       25
           similar to a card catalog, and, in some
10:04:33
```

```
instances, a few snippets - sentences of your
          search terms in context."
        3
                   Is that true?
                   Similar -- we can't determine copyright
        4
           status, but if we believe the book may be under
        5
10:04:46
        6
           copyright, then this is true.
        7
               Q.
                   So it's your testimony that Google is
          unable to determine the copyright status of the
        8
          books it scans?
                   Google makes a determination of how to
10:05:02
       10
               Α.
       11
           present these books to -- to our users, based
       12
           upon the -- the information we have. We cannot
           conclusively confirm that something is under
       13
           copyright because for the number of books, to do
       14
           this for each book and to identify who the
       15
10:05:25
           copyright holders are, whether or not it has
       16
       17
           gone into the public domain, is -- is very
           difficult.
       18
                   So Google -- it's your testimony that
       19
               Ο.
           Google is unable to determine whether books are
       20
10:05:43
       21
           or are not in copyright?
                   MS. DURIE: Objection. Asked and
       22
       2.3
           answered.
                   THE WITNESS: I believe I've answered
       24
       25
           the question.
10:05:52
```

40

310.322.7700

~ 415.956.6405

```
1
          BY MS. ZACK:
        2
               Q.
                   Is the answer yes or no?
                   MS. DURIE: Objection. Argumentative
        3
          and asked and answered.
10:05:58
                   MS. ZACK: It's not argumentative.
        6
                   THE WITNESS: I believe I've answered
        7
          the question.
        8
          BY MS. ZACK:
        9
                   It's a simple question. You believe
               Ο.
10:06:03
       10
          you've answered it. Are there any books for
          which Google is confident that it has determined
       11
       12
          whether the book is not in copyright or is in
       13
          copyright?
       14
               Α.
                   There are books that Google has
10:06:16
       15
          determined that we are confident that they are
       16
          not in copyright.
                   And are there any books which Google has
       17
               0.
          determined that it is confident that they are in
       18
       19
          copyright?
10:06:28
       20
               A. Google makes a determination of books
       21
          that we are confident are under -- are in the
       22
          public domain. We have books in our Partner
          Program that we are getting permission, we do
       23
       24
          not confirm the copyright status in terms of the
       25
10:06:47
          records, but we believe those books are under
```

41

310.322.7700

~ 415.956.6405

```
1
           copyright.
        2
                   Do you believe that Google has copied
        3
           books that were in copyright?
        4
                   MS. DURIE: Objection. Vaque.
10:07:08
        5
                   THE WITNESS: In our effort, we have
        6
           scanned books that are in copyright.
        7
           BY MS. ZACK:
        8
               Q.
                   In other words, you're not denying that
        9
           Google scans and copyrights books, are you?
10:07:14
       10
               Α.
                   I'm not denying it.
       11
                   Now, getting back to the process that
               0.
       12
           involves your categorizing, for your own
       13
           purposes, that a book will be -- can we say
       14
           deemed in copyright by Google?
10:07:34
       15
               Α.
                   I think it's fair to say deemed in the
           public domain. We don't deem it to be in
       16
       17
           copyright.
       18
                  All right. So you only make
       19
           determinations that you're confident that books
           are in the public domain?
10:07:49
       20
       21
               Α.
                  Correct.
       22
               0.
                   So Google does not try to determine
           whether the books it's copied are actually in
       23
       24
           copyright?
10:07:55
       25
                   MS. DURIE: Objection. Argumentative.
```

```
Asked and answered. Mischaracterizes the
        1
        2
           witness's testimony.
           BY MS. ZACK:
        3
               Ο.
                   Is that true?
        5
               Α.
10:08:01
                   Huh?
        6
               Q.
                   Is that true?
        7
               Α.
                   I think I've -- I think I've answered
        8
           that.
               Q.
                   Now, when you display snippets, how many
10:08:22
       10
           snippets from a book can a user see? How would
        11
           you describe that?
        12
                   The way I would describe it is when you
        13
           enter search query, it will display up to three
           snippets of that book in response to that query.
       14
10:08:43
       15
           For a given book and for a given query, those
       16
           snippets remain consistent, meaning it's the
       17
           same snippets. You issue the query again, you
        18
           see the same snippets.
       19
               Q.
                   And for that book, if another query is
10:08:58
       20
           entered, would other snippets from the book
        21
           appear?
        22
               Α.
                   Yes.
       23
                   So would it be accurate to describe
               Q.
           snippets as being limited to three per book?
       24
       25
10:09:13
           that an accurate description of Google's display
```

```
of snippets in a book?
        1
        2
                   As I said, I don't think that's an
        3
           accurate description. It is -- for a given
           query, we might display up to three snippets,
          but then if you entered a different query, you
        5
10:09:25
          might see different snippets.
        6
        7
                   Okay. And would it be an accurate
               Q.
        8
           description, in your view, of the Library
        9
           Project to discuss it without mentioning that
10:09:39
       10
           Google returns copies of the books scanned to
       11
           the libraries?
       12
                   MS. DURIE: Objection. That's vague and
       13
           ambiquous.
       14
                   THE WITNESS: Yeah.
       15
           BY MS. ZACK:
       16
                   Is -- if you gave a description of the
       17
           Library Project, do you think it would be
           complete if you omitted to include the fact that
       18
       19
           Google provides copies of the books it scans to
       20
           the libraries?
10:10:01
       21
                   MS. DURIE: Still vague.
                   THE WITNESS: So if you're asking me to
       22
           describe the Library Project right now, I would
       23
       24
           describe the Library Project as I stated before
           as including the scanning, indexing, search,
       25
10:10:16
```

44

310.322.7700

~ 415.956.6405

```
1
            discovery, snippets, along with the return of
            the book to the library and the -- and then the
          2
          3
            uses of those for other forms of nondisplay,
          4
            nonconsumptive research.
. 10:10:33
          5
            BY MS. ZACK:
          6
                Q. You would agree with me that a material
            part of the Library Project is Google's
         8
            distribution back to the library of a digital
            copy of the entire book scanned; correct?
                     MS. DURIE: Objection. It's vaque,
 10:10:46
         10
         11
            ambiguous, calls for a legal conclusion.
         12
                     THE WITNESS: Yeah. I'm not a lawyer.
         13
            So I won't -- I won't conclude, you know,
         14
            legally.
            BY MS. ZACK:
 10:10:57
         15
         16
                0.
                    Well, you would agree that it's an
         17
            important part of the Library Project that
            Google returns back to the library a digital
         18
         19
            copy of the entire book scanned; correct?
 10:11:10
                    As it -- it is part of the Library
         20
         21
            Project that -- as I stated -- that we provide a
         22
            copy, the ability to get a copy, for our library
         23
            partners of the books we scan, in addition to
         24
            any other uses.
         25
 10:11:29
                Q.
                     And how many books have been provided to
```

45

310.322.7700

~ 415.956.6405

```
1
                   I think that also would be potentially
               Α.
        2
           overbroad. I think we would want a database
           that would include metadata.
        4
                   But, then, in terms of our scanning
           initiative, we had an initiative that would
11:13:38
        5
        6
           allow rate holders to opt out. So we wanted
        7
           to -- the ambition would be to create a database
           that includes digitized books, as many books as
        8
           we -- we could obtain and scan, and you would
       10
           not include those books where rights holder
11:14:01
       11
           requested us not to scan.
                   When did Google start allowing people to
       12
       13
           opt out of scanning?
       14
                   I believe the time frame was somewhere
           in the time frame of summer 2005. I don't
       15
11:14:23
           remember the exact dates, but I think that was
       16
           approximately when we initiated our opt-out
       17
       18
           program.
                   Was that because Google -- let me
        19
           withdraw that.
11:14:42
        2.0
                    Did Google, after it announced --
        21
           publicly announced the Library Program, to your
        22
           knowledge, receive complaints from publishers
        23
           concerning the scanning of books from libraries?
        24
                    I am not aware of a specific complaint,
        25
               Α.
11:14:58
```

```
1
           but I believe we -- in general, I believe we did
        2
           receive complaints from some of our publisher
        3
           partners and others about the Library Project,
        4
           yes.
11:15:09
        5
                   So did you talk to anybody who was
           complaining?
        6
        7
                    I can't remember any specific meeting,
           but I -- I believe I would have been
        9
           participating in meetings with some of our
11:15:28
       10
           publisher partners that would have been
       11
           concerned about the Library Project, although I
       12
           can't tell you about any one particular one.
       13
                   And you did participate -- how
           frequently did you meet with Jim Gerber and Tom
       14
           Turvey?
11:15:43
       15
                    I would meet fairly regularly with Jim
       16
           and Tom.
       17
       18
                   Every week or --
               Q.
        19
               Α.
                    Yes.
11:15:49
       20
                    Okay. And they were the ones that were
               0.
        21
           talking to publishers on a regular basis;
           correct?
        22
        23
               Α.
                    Yes.
        24
                    And did they report to you the
               Q.
        25
           publishers were concerned about the Library
11:15:55
```

91

A669

```
1
           Project?
        2
               Α.
                    Yes.
        3
                   And when did they first start telling
               Q.
           you that?
11:16:02
        5
               Α.
                    I can't tell you exactly when, but
        6
           fairly -- fairly early on.
        7
               Ο.
                   Now, the Library Project was publicly
           announced by Google, prior to your joining
        8
        9
           Google; correct?
11:16:18
       10
                   I am pretty sure. Yes. I believe it
               Α.
       11
           was a few months before I joined was when it was
        12
           announced.
       13
                   MS. ZACK: Let's mark as, I guess, PX 8
       14
           a document with the Bates Nos. Google 101101
       15
           through 101116.
11:16:57
        16
                    (Whereupon, the document referred to
        17
                   was marked Plaintiffs' Exhibit 8 for
       18
                    identification by the Reporter, a
        19
                    copy of which is attached hereto.)
11:17:21
       2.0
           BY MS. ZACK:
        21
               Ο.
                   You can look at the entire document --
        22
               Α.
                   Yeah.
        23
                   -- but I'm going to refer you to the
               Ο.
        24
           page that's 010103.
11:17:32
       25
               Α.
                    Okay.
```

```
1
                   No, I don't.
               Α.
        2
                   Would it be fair to say that the
               Q.
        3
           publishers were briefed extensively by Google
           concerning the Library Project, after it was
        5
           publicly announced?
11:38:45
        6
               Α.
                   I believe there were numerous meetings
        7
           with publishers after the Library Project was
        8
           announced.
        9
               Q. And those publishers, therefore, were in
           a position to ask questions and get Google's
11:39:00
       10
       11
           responses concerning the project?
       12
                   I believe that there were publishers
       13
           that requested meetings for discussions on it,
        14
           and if -- if someone requested a meeting, then,
11:39:17
       15
           yes, we would -- they were able to ask
        16
           questions. We were fairly open about our
        17
           program.
        18
               Ο.
                    Okay. And it's fair to say that those
           publishers who were extensively briefed
        19
           expressed serious concerns about the Library
        20
11:39:31
           Project; is that correct?
        21
        22
                    MS. DURIE: Objection. Asked and
        23
           answered.
                    Go ahead.
        24
        25
                    THE WITNESS: I was not in many of those
11:39:39
```

```
meetings, but I think it is fair to say, as
        1
        2
           stated earlier, that a number of publishers had
           concerns about the Library Project and
        3
           communicated that to Google.
        4
        5
           BY MS. ZACK:
                   And is it fair to say that authors
        6
               0.
           groups also did so?
                   I believe it's also fair to say that,
        8
           certainly, the Authors Guild expressed concerns
           about the Library Project.
11:40:10
       10
                   Do you know of any other authors groups
       11
       12
           that Google talked to?
       13
                   I do not know of any other one prior to
               Α.
       14
           settlement -- settlement agreement and
           discussions during the settlement. I do not
       15
11:40:25
           know if there were other authors groups we
        16
        17
           talked to.
                   MS. ZACK: Okay. Let me mark as the
        18
           next exhibit document Google 5000439 through
        19
           446.
        20
11:40:46
                    (Whereupon, the document referred to
        21
                    was marked Plaintiffs' Exhibit 9 for
        22
        23
                    identification by the Reporter, a
                    copy of which is attached hereto.)
        24
        25
           BY MS. ZACK:
11:41:14
```

```
1
               Α.
                   I -- I -- not that I -- I expect it was
        2
          because of changes in the interface that would
          have reduced the ad's revenue.
        3
                   What benefits does Google, as a company,
11:47:19
        5
           get from the Google Books?
        6
                   So when we initiated the project, the
          motivation was about enhancing the Google search
        7
        8
           experience by expanding our index to include
           books that previously were not searchable or
       10
           indexable, and that users would then be able to
11:47:47
       11
           find these books and then access the books
       12
           either by purchasing them or finding them in a
       13
           library. By improving Google search, that
       14
           benefits Google because more people would use
       15
           search and might do more searches.
11:48:10
       16
                   And then the other benefit was Google
       17
           had always envisioned this as an ambitious
       18
           project whose benefits were going to be realized
           over time in terms of from a societal
       19
11:48:33
       20
           perspective and that that also benefits Google
       21
           in ways that by contributing to society, in
       22
           general, in a positive fashion, that also can be
       23
           good for the company in terms of establishing a
           brand and establishing a relationship with
       24
       25
           users.
11:48:55
```

MILLER & COMPANY REPORTERS 114 ~ 415.956.6405 ~ 800.487.6278

```
1
               0.
                   And you got that understanding from
        2
           discussions with senior management of Google?
               Α.
        3
                   Yes.
        4
                   And that would be Larry Page, Serge
11:49:29
        5
           Brent, Eric Schmidt? Others?
                   I think it's fair to say that I got this
        6
        7
           understanding from the other leads, when I came
           in, as to the why are we embarking on this
        9
           initiative. And then it was also as much my job
       10
           to articulate to our executive committee the
11:49:45
       11
           benefits of this project.
       12
                   And did -- were there other internal
       13
           benefits to Google from having the digitized
       14
           information?
       15
                   So there had been -- I'm aware of one
11:50:06
       16
           initiative where we used scans of works to help
           in automated translation, and that is where you
       17
       18
           would be using the underlying text to
       19
           automatically learn a system that can translate
       20
           from one language to another.
11:50:39
                   We predominantly use information
       21
       2.2
           obtained from the Web. So the use of books was
        2.3
           actually quite limited in that. But there had
        24
           been some use of the -- of the text for that.
       25
           It was -- it was minor, though.
11:50:53
```

```
1
                   The predominant use, far and away, is to
           enhance the search experience and have users
        2
        3
           search either on Google.com or with a restrict,
           just looking over the books corpus.
        4
                   Some of the documents I've seen is that
11:51:13
        5
               0.
           Google's mission is to organize and make
        6
        7
           available the world's content. Have you seen
           that?
        8
        9
                   Yes. I don't remember the organize and
11:51:27
       10
           make available -- I don't -- yeah. No. I know.
           The precise words, I -- you'll see it in lots of
       11
       12
           documents.
       13
               0.
                   So Google's mission, as you recall or
       14
           understand, is to organize and make useful the
           world's content?
11:51:46
       15
                   Information.
       16
               Α.
                   Information. And that's partly to
        17
               0.
        18
           enhance the search experience?
                   It's -- by enhancing the -- by enhancing
        19
               Α.
       20
           the search experience, we accomplish the
11:52:02
        21
           mission.
        22
                   And the better the search experience,
               Q.
           the more users for Google; is that right?
        23
                   So we believe that as our product
        24
11:52:16
        25
           improves and users have a better search
```

```
1
          experience, then more or the same number of
        2
          people will continue to use Google search.
        3
                   And then how is that monetized by
          Google?
        4
        5
11:52:30
               Α.
                   Google runs advertisements on Google
        6
          search in response to some but not all queries,
          and that is traditionally on the right-hand side
          or above the search results, and then we make
          money when people click on the advertisements.
11:52:49
       10
                   And is there any other way that Google
          makes money besides ads?
       11
       12
                   There are other initiatives within
       13
           Google,
                   yes.
       14
                   Do you know about how much or what
          percent of Google's revenues come from ad
11:53:00
       15
       16
           revenues?
       17
                   I do not know specifically, but a
               Α.
           large -- large percentage comes from
       18
           advertisements in one form or another.
       19
                   And as director of engineering for
       20
11:53:13
           Google Books, did you consider that your
       21
       22
           initiative was benefitting Google commercially?
                   I believe that this initiative was a
       23
               Α.
       24
           good investment for Google in terms of both the
       25
           ability to enhance search, but also for the
11:53:35
```

```
public benefits realized from the project.
        1
        2
                   The project was an expensive project,
          and I never did any analysis to determine if the
        3
           investment level, if there was a return on that
        4
        5
           investment.
11:53:58
        6
                   I executed on the project because it was
        7
          very much of a project that was driven from a
        8
          vision, and I executed on delivering that vision
          but never assessed whether or not we actually
          were financially benefitting when you looked at
11:54:12
       10
       11
           the overall cost of the project.
       12
                   Well, Google does not break out its
       13
          benefits on a product-by-product basis, does it,
       14
           in it's financials?
       15
                   Correct. To my knowledge, it does not.
11:54:24
               Α.
                   And have you heard the executives state
       16
           that they believe they cannot do so because all
       17
           the products are important and create a synergy
       18
           that benefits Google?
       19
11:54:43
       20
                   I have heard the --
       21
                   MS. DURIE: Wait. Wait. You need to
       22
           let her finish her question.
                               Sorry. Going slow.
       23
                   MS. ZACK:
       24
                   THE WITNESS: I have not heard the
           executives state that. I believe it would be
       25
11:54:51
```

118

A677

13:50:

13:50:

REDACTED

13:50:

13:51:04	20	Q. Does Google keep any statistics on how					
	21	many clicks there are on the Buy the Book's					
	22	links?					
	23	A. We did keep statistics on the					
	24	click-through rate for the Buy the Book link.					
13:51:21	25	Q. While you were director of engineering?					

MILLER & COMPANY REPORTERS

162

310.322.7700

415.956.6405 ~ 800.487.6278

www.millerreporters.com

1 A. Uh-huh. Yes.

13:51:41

REDACTED

Q. And did you have any information about 10 13:51:58 whether people ever bought the book after they 11 clicked? 12 13 A. In general, we weren't -- we did not have any information. We made various efforts 14 to get estimates from some of our partners, but 15 13:52:08 I don't remember ever really having a good 16 estimate of what the -- what happened once it 17 went off to partners. 18

13:52:24

22 **REDACTED**23
24
13:52:39 25

COMPANY REPORTERS

163

310.322.7700

415.956.6405

EXHIBIT 8

EPORTERS

CONFIDENTIAL

COPY COPY

IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK

THE AUTHORS GUILD, INC., Associational Plaintiff, BETTY MILES, JOSEPH GOULDEN, and JIM BOUTON, on behalf of themselves and all other similarly situated,))))	
Plaintiffs,)	
VS.)	Action No. 8136 (DC)
GOOGLE INC.,)	
Defendant.)))	

HIGHLY CONFIDENTIAL - SUBJECT TO PROTECTIVE ORDER

DEPOSITION OF: KURT GROETSCH

TAKEN ON: February 13, 2012

13043

A681

BRENDA L. MARSHALL CSR No. 6939

Los Angeles

San Francisco

```
1
                              KURT GROETSCH,
         2
                        a Witness having been duly
         3
                       sworn, testified as follows:
         4
                                EXAMINATION
         5
         6
           BY MS. ZACK:
         7
                    Could you state your full name for the
                Q.
        8
           record, please.
        9
                    Yes. Kurt McCollester Groetsch.
                Α.
        10
                Q.
09:30:46
                    And your address, please.
        11
                Α.
        12
        13
                Q.
                    You currently work for Google; is that
        14
           right?
09:30:58
       15
               Α.
                    Yes, I do.
        16
                Q.
                    What is your position?
        17
                Α.
                    Technical collections specialist.
        18
                    When did you join Google?
                Q.
        19
                    August of 2007.
                Α.
        20
                    Can you run through your employment
09:31:09
                Q.
        21
           history since college.
        22
                Α.
                    Since college.
        23
                Q.
                    Very briefly.
        24
                Α.
                    Very briefly. Sure. I worked as a
       25
           freelance graphic designer between 1994 and
09:31:19
```

MILLER & COMPANY REPORTERS A682 4 ~ 415.956.6405 ~ 800.487.6278

310.322.7700

```
1
           BY MS. ZACK:
        2
               Q.
                   Well, what do you understand it to be?
        3
                   MR. GRATZ: Objection. Vaque.
        4
                   THE WITNESS: We are -- so as I stated
          earlier, we are ingesting library catalogs in
10:00:45
        5
        6
           order to understand the -- what a library holds
        7
           and what may be eligible for digitization as
          part of the Library Project.
        8
           BY MS. ZACK:
        9
                   And how do you determine what's eligible
       10
10:00:59
               Q.
       11
           for digitization as part of the Library Project?
                   Well, I'm -- how do we -- are you asking
       12
               Α.
       13
           a question about the process, or are you asking
       14
           a question about the criteria that we use for
       15
           eligibility determination?
10:01:18
                   Let's start with the criteria.
       16
               Ο.
       17
                   Okay. There are criteria, three primary
           criteria, that we use. The first one is we
       18
       19
           determine -- we want to determine whether a book
           has been digitized already. If a book has been
10:01:32
       20
       21
           digitized already, it is ineligible.
       22
                   We also want to make sure that a
       23
           particular volume has been opted out from
       24
           digitization. If a book has been opted out, we
           will not scan it. If we determine that a book
       25
10:01:53
```

MILLER & COMPANY REPORTERS

27

```
1
           has been opted out, we will not scan it.
        2
                   And then we also eliminate material that
        3
           has been committed for digitizing by another
        4
           library.
        5
10:02:08
                   If a book passes all three criteria,
        6
           then we will place it on a candidate list, which
        7
           is just a list of all material from a particular
           library that passes all three criteria.
        8
                   And when -- after you place a book on
           the candidate list, what happens to the
10:02:26
       10
       11
           candidate list?
       12
               Α.
                  The candidate list is provided to the
       13
           library, the library partner, for them to
       14
           analyze, and they will use that to determine
10:02:40
       15
           what they choose to send to Google.
       16
                   And do you discuss in any way, either by
               Q.
       17
           e-mails or in writing or orally, with libraries
       18
           what -- how they make that selection process?
       19
                   MR. GRATZ: Objection. Vaque.
       2.0
10:03:01
                   THE WITNESS: Yeah. I'm not quite sure
           that I understand the question. Are we asking
       21
       22
           about --
       23
           BY MS. ZACK:
       24
               Q. I'll rephrase it if you don't understand
10:03:12
       25
           it.
```

```
Α.
        1
                   Sure.
        2
                   You said that Google, using the criteria
               Ο.
          you've described, creates a candidate list which
        3
           it provides to the library; correct?
               Α.
                   Yes.
10:03:19
        6
               Q.
                   To your knowledge -- and then the
        7
           library chooses books from that list that it's
        8
           going to allow Google to copy; is that correct?
                   They -- they choose books from that list
           to provide to Google for digitization.
10:03:32
       10
                   Okay. So my question is, do you
       11
           communicate with the library about their process
       12
       13
           of making that selection?
                   I generally don't discuss that directly
       14
           with the libraries. That would be a
       15
10:03:47
           conversation between the libraries and the
       16
       17
           library partner managers. Yeah. I generally
           don't have direct conversations about the
       18
       19
           specific books that they're going to send from
       20
           their collections, once they receive the
10:04:03
       21
           candidate list.
       22
                   Are you privy to those communications
               Q.
       23
           either through e-mail or discussions with your
       24
           manager?
                          I've been included in some e-mails
       25
               Α.
                   Yes.
10:04:13
```

```
1
           on that.
        2
               Ο.
                   And do you have any understanding from
           that as to what criteria, for instance, Michigan
        3
           uses?
                   Michigan is -- yes. I do understand the
10:04:23
           criteria that they use to select books for
        6
        7
           sending. Generally, yes, I've been -- I'm
           familiar with some of the criteria that
        8
        9
           libraries use.
                   Can you just tell me what that is?
       10
               0.
10:04:42
       11
                   In general, libraries have used
               Α.
       12
           logistical considerations to determine what to
       13
           send to -- to Google for digitization.
       14
                   Libraries are interested in the ease of
       15
          access to the books, and they've mentioned that
10:05:01
       16
           they're also concerned about, like, there -- a
       17
           lot of physical logistical considerations that
       18
          have to be taken into account.
       19
                   So whether there are facilities for
10:05:20
       20
          staging books in a particular building, whether
          there's access to a loading dock to get the
       21
       22
          books out, and whether -- you know, what the
       23
           sensibilities of a particular librarian in a
       24
          particular library are.
       25
                   So, generally, it's logistical
10:05:35
```

310.322.7700

MILLER & COMPANY REPORTERS **A686** 30 ~ 415.956.6405 ~ 800.487.6278 www.millerreporters.com

```
1
           considerations that we work with when libraries
        2
           are determining what to send.
        3
                   Any other considerations that you've
               Q.
           learned of that libraries have brought to
        4
        5
           Google's attention?
10:05:50
        6
               Α.
                   Let's see. There may be some internal
           discussions about collections that they would
        7
        8
           care to digitize over others, but, in general,
        9
           those discussions about particular collections
       10
           are internal, and they're not decisions that we
10:06:12
       11
           participate in.
       12
                    "We" meaning Google?
       13
                   Google, yes.
               Α.
       14
                   Now, to -- you mentioned to prepare the
               Q.
10:06:32
       15
           candidate list, Google has three mentioned
       16
           criteria.
       17
               Α.
                   Uh-huh.
       18
                   Whether the book has already been
               0.
       19
           digitized, and I assume you mean digitized by
10:06:42
       20
           Google; correct?
       21
               Α.
                   Yes.
       22
                   And that Google has its own records to
       23
           determine that; correct?
       24
                   Yes. We know which books have -- are
10:06:51
       25
           part of the corpus of digitized material.
```

```
BY MS. ZACK:
        1
        2
                   -- in your job at Google?
               Q.
                   In my job? I do not use this set -- no.
        3
               Α.
        4
           I do not use this set of records in my job at
12:00:31
        5
           Google.
        6
                   Do you ever have occasion to review
               Ο.
        7
           copyright renewal records as part of your job at
        8
           Google?
                   I -- copyright renewal records?
        9
               Α.
       10
               Q.
                   Yes.
12:00:46
       11
                   I have viewed them in the past, yes.
               Α.
       12
               Q.
                   While at Google?
                   While at Google.
       13
               Α.
                                     Yes.
                   And for what purpose?
       14
               Q.
                   To determine whether a particular title
       15
               Α.
12:00:57
       16
           that was originally registered has a renewal
        17
           record.
        18
               Q.
                   And why were you doing that?
        19
                    In some cases, it is curiosity.
               Α.
           other cases, it is -- it would be part of --
12:01:18
        20
        21
           part of my role, sort of a secondary role in --
        22
           let's see. I'm trying to characterize it.
           Looking -- it is to determine whether there is a
        23
        24
           renewal record present for a particular volume.
        25
                    And when you want to determine if a
               Q.
12:01:51
```

MILLER & COMPANY REPORTERS A688 104

~ 415.956.6405 ~ 800.487.6278

www.millerreporters.com

```
1
          renewal record is present for a particular
        2
          volume, how do you do that?
        3
               Α.
                   There are a variety of tools one can
        4
           use. One is the Stanford copyright renewal
        5
           database, which is fairly comprehensive.
12:02:08
           There's also a -- for 1978 onward, as mentioned
        6
        7
           in the post, U.S. government -- U.S. copyright
           office records are available online through
           their site.
       10
               0.
                   Any other tools that you've used?
12:02:20
                   I believe that is -- those are the
       11
               Α.
       12
           primary tools.
       13
                  And have you -- using those tools, have
       14
           you been able to determine whether a book --
       15
           copyright for a given book has or has not been
12:02:35
       16
           renewed?
                  Using those tools, you can determine
       17
       18
           whether or not a renewal record is present.
       19
                   MS. ZACK: Let's mark as the next, PX
           35, two pages, Google 5000787 through 788.
12:02:59
       20
                   (Whereupon, the document referred to
       21
                   was marked Plaintiffs' Exhibit 35 for
       22
       23
                   identification by the Reporter, a
       24
                   copy of which is attached hereto.)
12:03:21
       25
           BY MS. ZACK:
```

MILLER & COMPANY REPORTERS

105

EXHIBIT 9

OMPANY EPORTERS

CONFIDENTIAL **CERTIFIED COPY**

IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK

THE AUTHORS GUILD, INC.,)		
Associational Plaintiff, BETTY)		
MILES, JOSEPH GOULDEN, and JIM)		
BOUTON, on behalf of themselves)		
and all other similarly situated,)		
)		
Plaintiffs,)		
)		Action No.
VS.)	05 CV	8136 (DC)
)		
GOOGLE INC.,)		•
)		
Defendant.)		
)		

HIGHLY CONFIDENTIAL - SUBJECT TO PROTECTIVE ORDER

DEPOSITION OF: STEPHANE JASKIEWICZ

TAKEN ON:

February 14, 2012

NO.

13044

A691

BRENDA L. MARSHALL CSR-No. 6939

Los Angeles

San Francisco

```
Director of engineering? Is that what
        1
        2
           you said?
                   Yeah. The exact title was Director of
        3
               Α.
           Product Development.
        4
                   When you joined Google, what position
11:04:01
           did you take in April 2007?
        6
        7
                   Program manager.
               Α.
        8
                   And what were your -- how long did you
               Ο.
           hold that position?
        9
                   It's not very clear. Things are often
               Α.
11:04:14
       10
       11
           in a continuum. So I actually didn't act that
       12
           much as a program manager, mostly as an
           engineering manager, which is what I'm doing
       13
           today.
       14
                  Mostly as an engineering manager?
       15
               0.
11:04:27
               Α.
                  Yeah.
       16
                  So since about April 2007 till today,
       17
           you've been an engineering manager, essentially,
       18
           for Google, or acted in that capacity?
       19
                   Yeah. It's a continuum. I started
       20
               Α.
11:04:37
           doing project management in the beginning and
       21
           very quickly moved to more technical issues.
       22
       23
                   Okay. And have you been assigned to
               Q.
           Google Books for that entire period?
       24
               Α.
                   Yes.
11:04:50
       25
```

800.487.6278

```
scan center?
        1
                   It is in the scan center, yes.
        2
               Α.
                   And does your team write any software
        3
               Ο.
           for the check-in station?
        4
                   Yes.
11:19:18
        5
               Α.
                   And what is the purpose of the check-in
        6
        7
           station?
               Α.
                   There -- there are a few of them.
                                                        The
        8
           two main ones are I -- or I quess the main
           one -- because they all end up determining
11:19:33
       10
       11
           whether or not the book is fit to scan. I quess
       12
           the other one is to register -- register the
           fact the book is in the scanning center so that
       13
           we can track it later and inquire about its
       14
           location in the scanning center.
       15
11:19:48
                   And when you say determine whether the
       16
               0.
           book is fit to scan, how is that determined?
       17
                   So one of the things is what you asked
       1.8
           about, opt-outs, in determining whether or not
       19
           the book is opted out. The others have to do
       2.0
11:20:03
           with physical conditions of the book. We have
       21
           different type of scanning stations for
       22
           different type of material so they tell us which
       23
       24
           one is, like, the appropriate one.
                   They also check for the size of the
       25
11:20:17
```

```
book, make sure that we can actually scan it.
        1
        2
           They check for the condition of the book.
        3
           it's too damaged, we won't scan it. And they
           check for specific conditions, like the text
           being too close to the gutter. If it is, then
11:20:29
           we won't scan it because we wouldn't be able to
        6
           capture all the text.
        7
        8
               Ο.
                   Too close to the what?
               Α.
                   The gutter.
        9
       10
               Q.
                   The binding of the book?
11:20:40
       11
               Α.
                   Yeah.
                           The binding of the book. Sorry.
       12
               Q.
                   So the scan wouldn't end up being useful
           to view?
       13
               Α.
                   Correct.
       14
                   Do you have any responsibility for
       15
               Q.
11:20:49
           creating the opt-out list at Google?
       16
       17
               Α.
                   No.
                   Do you know who does?
       1.8
               Ο.
                   So I don't know how to answer that
       19
               Α.
           question because Google doesn't decide what the
       20
11:21:05
           opt-out list is. It's just publishers coming
       21
           forward and telling us what the list should be
       22
           of things we shouldn't scan.
       23
       24
                   Right. But does someone have the
               Q.
          responsibility for making sure that list is
       25
11:21:18
```

www.millerreporters.com

800.487.6278

EXHIBIT 10

```
Page 1
1
                    CONF
                            IDENTIAL * * *
2
                UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
                 SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK
 3
 4
 5
      THE AUTHORS GUILD, et
                                   )
      al.,
                                   )
 6
                    Plaintiffs,
 7
                                        No. 05 Civ.
                vs.
 8
                                            8136 (DC)
      GOOGLE INC.,
 9
                    Defendant.
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
                            February 17, 2012
17
                            9:52 a.m.
18
19
              Deposition of THOMAS TURVEY, held at
20
        the offices of Milberg, One Penn Plaza, New
21
        York, New York, before Laurie A. Collins, a
22
        Registered Professional Reporter and Notary
        Public of the State of New York.
23
24
25
                         A696
```

Pages 57-61, 81-85, 88-92 and 102-05 of the Deposition of Thomas Turvey will be filed under seal

_	
	Page 3
1	
2	THOMAS TURVEY,
3	called as a witness, having been duly sworn
4	by the notary public, was examined and
5	testified as follows:
6	EXAMINATION BY
7	MS. ZACK:
8	Q. Good morning.
9	A. Good morning.
10	Q. Can you state your full name and
11	address, please?
12	A. Sure. Thomas Turvey,
13	REDACTED
14	Q. And you work for Google?
15	A. I do.
16	Q. What is your position?
17	A. I am the director of strategic
18	partnerships.
19	Q. How long have you had that particular
20	position at Google, approximately?
21	A. Approximately three years.
22	Q. And when did you join Google?
23	A. February 2004.
2 4	Q. And when you first joined, what was
25	your position? $A698$
	AU/U

	Page 62
1	Turvey - Confidential
2	happened.
3	Q. I'm expanding it out and saying aside
4	from this particular meeting do you recall ever
5	hearing from any publishers that they took the
6	position that Google should get permission before
7	scanning copyrighted materials?
8	A. I have heard that from publishers.
9	Q. Do you recall which publishers?
10	A. Not specifically.
11	Q. Have you heard that from my authors?
12	A. I have heard that from authors involved
13	in this case that are named in this case.
14	Q. Which authors are you speaking of?
15	A. I'm speaking of Jim I'm sorry, I
16	forgot the last name. You're not going to help me
17	with that? Okay. Fine.
18	MS. DURIE: Sorry.
19	Q. Jim Boughton?
20	A. No, not Jim Boughton. Besides
21	Q. Jim Glick?
22	A. Jim Glick, yes.
23	Q. All right. So you heard from Jim Glick
24	that who is an author?
25	A. Yes. $\mathbf{A699}$

	Page 63
1	Turvey - Confidential
2	Q. What did he say?
3	A. I don't remember specifically.
4	Q. Did he say to you that he thought
5	Google should get permission before scanning in
6	copyright materials?
7	A. It's possible he said that.
8	Q. There are persons rights holders who
9	have said that to you; right?
10	A. It's possible, yeah.
L1	Q. Well, what I'm saying is you may not
12	recall specifically who said it, but you recall
13	that rights holders have said that to you
L 4	correct? that they believe that Google should
15	get permission before scanning in copyright
۱6	materials; correct?
L 7	MS. DURIE: Objection, asked and
18	answered.
19	You can answer.
20	A. As I stated, I have no specific
21	recollection other than Jim Glick, but it's
22	possible that was said to me.
23	Q. Do you have a general recollection that
24	that was said to you?
25	MS. DURIE: Objection, asked and ${ m A700}$

	Page 64
1	Turvey - Confidential
2	answered.
3	A. I have nothing more to add.
4	Q. Well, there's a difference between
5	saying it was possible and saying I have a general
6	recollection that it was said to me but I can't
7	identify precisely who said it.
8	What I'm trying to ascertain is if you
9	agree that it was said to you; you just can't
LO	recall who said it.
L1	MS. DURIE: Asked and answered.
L2	You can answer.
13	A. I have nothing more to add.
L 4	Q. What was the reason that Google met
15	with the AAP?
۱6	MS. DURIE: Objection, calls for
L 7	speculation.
18	You can answer.
19	Q. To the extent you know.
20	A. Upon request.
21	Q. And prior to attending the meeting, did
22	you get some sense of what the meeting was going
23	to be about?
24	A. I was told it would be about the
25	library project. A701

		Page 96
1		Turvey - Confidential
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		REDACTED
7		
8		
9		
10		
11	Q.	Did you at any time get any data about
12	whether aft	er the "buy the book" link was clicked
13	that books	were actually purchased?
14	A .	Not that I remember.
15	Q.	Did you ever attempt to get that data?
16	А.	I think we had a discussion or two.
17	Q.	Was there some reason why you didn't
18	get that do	one?
19	А.	As I remember, no retailer was willing
20	to provide	that to us.
21	Q.	Excuse me?
22	Α.	As I remember, no retailer was willing
23	to provide	that to us.
24		REDACTED
25		A702
		A /UZ

EXHIBIT 11

Perle

	Page 1
1	UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
2	SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK
3	Master File No.: 05 CV 8136-DC
4	
5	
6	
7	THE AUTHORS GUILD, et. al.,
8	Plaintiffs,
9	vs.
10	GOOGLE, INC.,
11	Defendants.
12	/
13	
14	2500 South Ocean Boulevard
	Apartment 3A5
15	Palm Beach, Florida
	Monday, 2:00-3:37 p.m.
16	March 19, 2012
17	
18	
19	DEPOSITION OF E. GABRIEL PERLE
20	
21	
22	Taken on behalf of the Plaintiffs before Janet M.
23	Willitz, RPR, RMR, Notary Public in and for the State of
24	Florida at Large, pursuant to Plaintiffs' Notice of
25	Taking Deposition in the above cause.

	Page 7
1	book publishing industry, is that correct?
2	A. Yes.
3	Q. Do you consider Google to be a part of the
4	book publishing industry?
5	A. What a strange question. I mean, it's all a
6	matter of definition. Certainly, Google is
7	participating in the book publishing industry now, but
8	it's not what I would consider to be a book publisher as
9	such.
10	Q. And then the next sentence says: I have not
11	been asked to and do not herein render any opinions
12	regarding issues of substantive copyright law.
13	What do you mean by that?
14	A. Just what it says.
15	Q. What type of substantive issues are you not
16	rendering opinions about?
17	A. Oh, what constitutes fair use would be the
18	obvious one, but whether or not something is subject to
19	libel or things of that nature.
20	Q. So you're not offering any opinions about fair
21	use, right?
22	A. Correct.
23	Q. Are you offering any opinions about whether
24	any particular authors are legal or beneficial owners?
25	A. No.

į	Page 19
1	A. Yes.
2	Q. I'd like for you to look at paragraph 20 on
3	page 5 of your declaration.
4	A. I've got it.
5	Q. And you write: Some publishing contracts
6	provide for royalty-free promotional uses. Then you
7	say: Under such contracts, the author has given up
8	legal ownership of the copyright, but does not have the
9	right to receive royalties for promotional uses.
10	A. Yes.
11	Q. What do you mean by legal ownership there?
12	A. Legal ownership.
13	Q. As opposed to what?
14	A. As opposed to just an interest.
15	Q. Well, are you making any judgments about that
16	official ownership?
17	A. Not at this point, no.
18	Q. So you're not suggesting that an author who
19	has given a publisher a royalty-free promotional right
20	has given up its beneficial interest in the copyright,
21	are you?
22	A. No.
23	Q. Now in paragraph 21, the first sentence says:
24	Some contracts expressly prohibit royalty-free
25	promotional use, comma, reserving all electronic

The state of the s
Page 39
Q. No royalties shall be payable on copies
furnished gratis to the author or for review,
advertising sample, sales promotion or like purposes or
on copies destroyed by fire or other accident, but
nothing in this clause shall be construed as exempting
from royalty copies supplied by the publisher for resale
in payment for trade advertising.
Do you see that?
A. Yes.
Q. And you would agree that that is a promotional
use clause, correct?
MR. GRATZ: Objection, vague.
You can answer it.
THE WITNESS: Well, you can call it anything
you want to. You can call it macaroni, but, I
mean, you're trying to characterize, by a label, a
sentence which has clear meaning in the English
language, and in the custom of the trade, people
don't refer to clauses in contracts with labels
that way.
BY MS. ZACK:
Q. So is it correct that in your practice you
have never heard the phrase promotional use?
A. Of course, I've heard it.

So it's not a phrase that you're unfamiliar

Q.

Perle

	Page 40
1	with?
2	A. Wait a minute. Did you say promotional use
3	clause?
4	Q. Yes.
5	A. No, I've heard the phrase promotional use, the
6	term promotional use clause.
7	Q. So you've heard the term promotional use.
8	MR. GRATZ: I'm not sure that the witness was
9	finished with his answer.
LO	MS. ZACK: Oh, I'm sorry, I thought he was.
L1	THE WITNESS: Now I am because I don't
L2	remember where I was.
L3	MS. ZACK: The reporter can read it back to
L 4	you.
L5	(Thereupon, the portion referred to was read
۱6	by the reporter as above recorded.)
L7	THE WITNESS: Okay.
18	BY MS. ZACK:
19	Q. And so in your trade usage, you've heard the
20	phrase promotional use?
21	A. Yes.
22	Q. And you've seen promotional use provisions in
23	contracts?
24	A. Of course.
25	Q. But you don't like clause? You don't like

	Page 41
1	that word, that phrase?
2	A. You're asking me if that is the customary
3	language.
4	Q. No, sir, I'm not asking you whether it's
5	customary or not; I'm just asking you whether, in this
6	particular contract, you would consider it a promotional
7	use provision.
8	A. Of course.
9	Q. And in trade custom and usage, what is the
10	promotional use?
11	A. How long is a piece of string? I can't answer
12	that question.
13	Q. Well, I mean, what are the reasons why
14	promotional use provisions are included in these
15	contracts?
16	A. So that the publisher can authorize
17	promotional use of excerpts to benefit the sale of a
18	book.
19	Q. Right. And also so the publisher can
20	distribute the book for reviews?
21	A. Oh, sure.
22	Q. What other types of uses or what other types
23	of promotional purposes are there?
24	A. That's almost impossible to answer. As many
25	

	Page 42
1	Q. You gave an example of excerpts, and that
2	would be excerpts for what? What type of excerpts would
3	you You started practicing in the '50s and '60s,
4	right?
5	MR. GRATZ: Objection. So the question is:
6	You started practicing in the '50s or '60s?
7	MS. ZACK: Yes.
8	THE WITNESS: Yes.
9	BY MS. ZACK:
10	Q. And at that time, there were no electronic
11	rights, right?
12	A. Wrong.
13	Q. Well, what electronic rights were there at
14	that time?
15	A. All kinds of mechanical recording rights and
16	transmission rights.
17	Q. So with respect to the mechanical recording
18	and transmission rights, were there promotional uses
19	with respect to those rights?
20	MR. GRATZ: Objection, vague as to time.
21	MS. ZACK: That's fine, I'm talking about back
22	in the '50s and '60s.
23	MR. GRATZ: That's still vague.
24	BY MS. ZACK:
25	Q. Did you, as a matter of custom and trade

	Page 43
1	practice, when you were a publisher, use microfiche or
2	microfilm for promotional uses?
3	A. No.
4	Q. What types of outlets did you typically use in
5	the '50s and '60s for promotional uses?
6	A. Trade advertising, newspaper advertising, The
7	Sunday Times Book Review, Publishers Weekly. Things of
8	that nature.
9	Q. And that would include excerpts, right?
LO	A. Sure, it could.
L1	Q. And sometimes you would give away the whole
12	book so it could be reviewed, right?
13	A. Right.
L 4	Q. And you used excerpts for advertising,
15	correct?
16	A. Correct.
17	Q. And so, I mean, this has been a longstanding
18	practice in the publishing industry, correct?
19	A. What has?
20	Q. To have provisions in contracts for
21	promotional uses.
22	A. Yes, historically, publishing contracts
23	provide for promotional uses of all or part.
24	Q. Right, and typically they're royalty-free
25	because neither the publisher nor the author is getting

	Page 44
1	any compensation, correct?
2	A. Correct.
3	Q. And that's what my point is. That's not
4	something new that just developed in the last ten years;
5	that's been going on for fifty years, right?
6	A. In a different context, yes.
7	Q. Now referring back to the contract that we
8	were looking at, which was, I believe, 60-G, correct?
9	A. Correct.
10	Q. Referring you back to the paragraph note that
11	we looked at a little bit before which says: No royalty
12	shall be payable on copies furnished gratis to the
13	author or for review, advertising sample, sales
14	promotion or like purposes.
15	A. What paragraph is that?
16	Q. It's on AG100060, and it's a paragraph that
17	looks like to me that it has got a (k) in it.
18	A. I've got it.
19	Q. But it says: No royalty, et cetera. Do you
20	see that?
21	A. Yes.
22	Q. That's a promotion clause, correct, or a
23	provision of this contract?
24	MR. GRATZ: Objection, vague. Asked and
25	answered.

	Page 45
1	MS. ZACK: Well, I really can't remember
2	whether it has been asked and answered. I thought
3	he said: I could call it macaroni. I'm just
4	trying to get a straight answer here.
5	BY MS. ZACK:
6	Q. You would agree with me, Mr. Perle, that this
7	is a promotion clause, correct?
8	MR. GRATZ: Objection, vague. Asked and
9	answered.
10	You can answer it if you understand the
11	question.
12	THE WITNESS: Well, you can call it whatever
13	you want to call it. It covers Repeat your
14	question.
15	BY MS. ZACK:
16	Q. What does it cover?
17	A. Repeat your question.
18	Q. My question was: Would you call it a
19	promotion? Do you think it covers promotional uses?
20	A. It covers promotional uses, yes.
21	Q. All right.
22	A. It covers promotional royalties on promotional
23	uses.
24	Q. And it says: There will be no royalties,
25	right?

www.veritext.com

		Page 46
1	A.	Correct.
2	Q.	As was standard
3		MR. GRATZ: Objection.
4	BY MS. ZAG	CK:
5	Q.	in the publishing procedure, correct?
6		MR. GRATZ: Objection. Vague as to the time.
7	BY MS. ZAC	CK:
8	Q.	Well, did that ever change in your experience?
9	A.	Did what ever change?
10	Q.	Was there a time when it was typical to give
11	royalties	for promotional uses, and then it changed?
12	A.	No.
13	Q.	So it has pretty much been the same for all
14	your fifty	y years of practice, right?
15		MR. GRATZ: Objection, vague in its use of
16	promo	otional uses.
17		You can answer it if you understand the
18	quest	cion.
19		THE WITNESS: Repeat the question.
20	BY MS. ZAG	CK:
21	Q.	My question was whether Well, never mind.
22	I'm going	to withdraw it. It's not necessary at this
23	point.	
24		Let's now look at 60-J.
25	A.	I have it.

Page 53
Q. Now with respect to all of these contracts, PX
60-A through the last one, which I guess is 60-Y, in
each of these contracts, there were royalty clauses,
correct?
A. Correct.
Q. Is that typical in your experience in the book
publishing industry?
A. For a book publishing contract to provide for
royalties? Yes.
Q. Have you personally ever registered a
copyright?
A. What do you mean by registered a copyright? I
have
Q. Not for yourself, but for Time, Inc.?
A. No, I had associates, lawyers and clerks to
take care of the clerical functions, and registration
was one of those.
Q. Did you have a practice as to whether or not
you attempted to register within ninety days of
publication when you were at Time, Inc.?
A. I gave orders that all books that were
published should have a registration filed within that
period of time.
Q. Which is ninety days of the first publication?
A. Yes.

	Page 54
1	Q. So you gave those orders to the persons
2	working for you?
3	A. Yes.
4	Q. And was that because you wanted to have the
5	right to recover statutory damages in the event of an
6	infringement?
7	MR. GRATZ: Objection, vague as to time.
8	BY MS. ZACK:
9	Q. When you gave those orders, was that the
10	reason for the orders because you wanted to have the
11	right to recover statutory damages for infringement?
12	MR. GRATZ: Same objection.
13	THE WITNESS: That was part of the reason, and
14	it's also the time provided in this statute.
15	BY MS. ZACK:
16	Q. Have you ever in your practice attempted to
17	determine whether a book was registered, whether the
18	copyright for a book was registered?
19	A. Yes.
20	Q. Have you been able to do that?
21	A. Yes.
22	Q. How do you do that?
23	A. I have somebody in my office that works for me
24	do it.
25	Q. Do you know what steps they take?

	Page 55
1	A. No.
2	Q. Were people in your office typically able to
3	determine that information for you?
4	A. They would, yes.
5	Q. And did you sometimes ask people working for
6	you to determine whether a copyright in a particular
7	book had been registered within ninety days?
8	A. Repeat that.
9	Q. Did you sometimes, in your work, ask those who
10	reported to you, to check to see, with respect to
11	certain books, whether their copyright had, in fact,
12	been registered within ninety days?
13	A. Probably, but I don't remember any specific
14	instances.
15	Q. You don't recall having any problems in making
16	determinations as to the registration status of books?
17	A. No.
18	Q. And you would agree that if an author has the
19	royalty right under a contract, even if the contract is
20	not reverted, the author is the beneficial owner,
21	correct?
22	MR. GRATZ: Objection. Calls for a legal
23	conclusion.
24	You can answer it.
25	THE WITNESS: No, I have no answer to that.

www.veritext.com

	Page 57
1	the copyright office or something like that?
2	A. No, no. It's just that there is no office
3	that I know of where such requests are collected and
4	archived. I don't know what the copyright office is
5	doing.
6	Q. And then 19 says: Some offices do not
7	maintain records of where the rights have reverted.
8	A. Correct.
9	Q. What is your basis for that?
10	A. Instances that I know of.
11	Q. Is it also true that some publishers do not
12	maintain records of where the rights have reverted?
13	A. I don't know the answer to that.
14	Q. All right. How many hours have you worked in
15	this matter, Mr. Perle?
16	A. I honestly don't know.
17	Q. Just approximately?
18	A. Twenty. That's a rough guess.
19	Q. I understand. Do you have any knowledge about
20	what purposes Google is using your declaration for?
21	A. Repeat that.
22	Q. Do you know why you have been asked to give
23	these opinions?
24	A. No.
25	Q. Have you read Google's brief?

•	Page 58
1	A. Yes. Oh, no, not the brief.
2	Q. And you haven't read Google's brief in which
3	your declaration is cited?
4	A. No.
5	Q. So obviously, you can't say whether you agree
6	or disagree with the use that Google is making of your
7	opinion?
8	A. You are correct.
9	Q. We're almost done.
LO	A. All right.
L1	Q. Can we look at a couple more contracts? If
L2	you would, please look at PX 60-V.
L3	MR. GRATZ: Is that G as in golf?
L 4	MS. ZACK: No, I'm sorry, it's V as in Victor.
L 5	MR. GRATZ: V as in Victor? New American
L 6	Library?
L7	MS. ZACK: No.
L 8	THE WITNESS: I've got it.
19	MS. ZACK: I think it's Chronicle Books.
20	MR. GRATZ: Oh, I'm sorry, the U and the V
21	look very similar.
22	MS. ZACK: Yes, they do look alike.
23	BY MS. ZACK:
24	Q. It's Chronicle Books, and it's AG100192 is the
25	first Bates number.

EXHIBIT 12

```
Page 1
1
2
                UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
                SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK
3
4
5
     THE AUTHORS GUILD, et
                                  )
     al.,
                                  )
6
                   Plaintiffs,
7
                                  )
                vs.
                                  )
                                        No. 05 Civ.
8
                                            8136 (DC)
                                  )
     GOOGLE INC.,
                                  )
9
                   Defendant.
10
11
12
13
14
15
                            March 22, 2012
16
                            12:50 p.m.
17
18
                Deposition of HAL PORET, held at the
19
         offices of Milberg, One Penn Plaza, New York,
20
         New York, before Laurie A. Collins, a
21
         Registered Professional Reporter and Notary
22
         Public of the State of New York.
23
24
25
```

	Page 19
1	Poret
2	Q. Why? What was the purpose of looking
3	at it?
4	A. Just to generally learn about the case.
5	Q. And did you make use of any information
6	from that complaint in designing your survey?
7	A. Yes.
8	Q. What information?
9	A. Basically how the plaintiffs described
10	the issues and what the case was about.
11	Q. Then number 2 you say you reviewed the
12	following materials: Gale Contemporary Authors
13	data. Which particular Gale Contemporary Authors
14	data did you review?
15	A. The database that was the list of
16	authors that the survey was done from.
17	Q. That's in that?
18	MS. DURIE: I was going to say, Joanne,
19	you had asked to receive a copy of it, and I
20	have a copy of it (handing).
21	MS. ZACK: Okay. Thanks.
22	Q. Now, in your report you say that Gale
23	has, I don't know, 600 databases or something; is
24	that right?
25	A. Yes.

	Page 20
1	Poret
2	Q. How did you pick the one you used?
3	A. Gale maintains a number of different
4	databases that are different subject matter or
5	purposes, and this was their database which is a
6	reference work that consists of authors. So this
7	was since the purpose was to interview authors,
8	that was the relevant database.
9	Q. And did Gale have any other databases
10	with authors included?
11	A. I don't know if they have any others.
12	My understanding was this was the most
13	comprehensive attempt to keep track of published
14	authors that they have.
15	Q. Did you talk to somebody from Gale?
16	A. No.
17	Q. How did you choose this particular
18	database, or did someone else choose it?
19	A. The attorneys from Durie Tangri gave me
20	this database.
21	Q. So you did not choose the database;
22	that was done by Durie Tangri?
23	A. Well, I wouldn't say I didn't choose
24	it. When I was called about the case, we I
25	discussed with them the need to have a way to get

Page 21 1 Poret 2 through to the right types of respondents and that I would need some way -- some way to get through 3 to authors. And they told me that they had access 4 to this database. And so we discussed whether 5 6 that would be suitable for the survey, and I 7 decided that I felt that it would be. So I --8 Did you investigate whether there are Q. 9 other databases with authors information 10 available? 11 Α. Yes. 12 And you found no other databases? Q. 13 Α. I didn't -- I didn't find -- I wouldn't say that, but when I searched around I didn't find 14 any leads on anything that I thought would be more 15 16 suitable than this or any reason to think this 17 wouldn't be suitable. 18 Well, what was the target population Q. 19 for your survey? 20 In a broad sense it was authors -- it was published authors, and in a more narrow sense 21 22 I understood the class to be limited to authors 23 who I believe have had a copyright registration 24 filed within three months of the book being 25 published, maybe.

Page 22 1 Poret 2 So -- so that would have been the 3 narrower definition of the universe that I was going for. 4 5 So the universe you were attempting to Q. locate was published authors that had a copyright 6 7 registration filed within three months? 8 Well, I was attempting to get published Α. 9 authors in general but find out whether they had 10 had a copyright registration filed within that 11 period so as to determine whether they met that 12 definition of the class, if that's what the 13 definition was going to be. 14 And what did you do to attempt to find Q. those people who had copyrights registered within 15 16 three months? 17 Just ask questions as part of the 18 survey to determine, once we've reached somebody, 19 did they fall into that description of the class. 20 Q. Did Google provide you with any data 21 concerning books that were actually copied by them 22 in their library project? 23 Α. No. 24 Q. Did you ask for that data? 25 Α. No.

	Page 38
1	Poret
2	have them? You don't have it on a respondent-by-
3	respondent basis?
4	A. This is a respondent-by-respondent
5	basis.
6	Q. I'm just asking you if this is the only
7	format in which this information exists.
8	A. It exists in an Excel spreadsheet, and
9	this is the Excel spreadsheet printed out.
10	Q. And there's nothing else that you have
11	concerning the no other format in which the
12	data exists other than the Excel spreadsheet?
13	A. I can't think of what it would be.
14	This is literally every response of every
15	respondent.
16	Q. Okay. I'm just trying to ascertain if
17	there's anything else. You're telling me there
18	isn't.
19	A. No.
20	MS. ZACK: Let's mark as the next
21	exhibit, 76, Reference Manual on Scientific
22	Evidence, second edition, Federal Judicial
23	Center 2000.
24	(Plaintiffs' Exhibit 76, Reference
25	Manual on Scientific Evidence, marked for

Page 39
Poret
identification.)
Q. Have you seen this before?
A. Yes.
Q. Do you use this in connection with your
surveys?
A. I'm familiar with it. I don't use it
in the sense that I consult it as I'm doing a
survey. But I'm familiar with the general
principles that are discussed within it.
Q. And do you try to follow the principles
discussed in it?
A. Yes.
Q. Are there any principles discussed in
it that you disagree with?
MS. DURIE: It's overbroad.
But you can answer.
Q. That you can tell me.
A. There are some things discussed in this
which are out of date. There are some things that
are discussed in this which I wouldn't put it
quite the same way as Dr. Diamond, so perhaps a
moderate disagreement.
She is also in the process of redoing
it right now, but for the most part these are

Page 40 1 Poret 2 pretty accepted principles on a general basis. 3 Well, are there any generally accepted survey principles that you do consider to be 4 authoritative? 5 6 MS. DURIE: It's vaque. 7 You can answer. A lot of what's in here I consider to 8 Α. 9 be generally authoritative. It's just extremely 10 generally. And in designing a survey, general statements of survey principles aren't all that 11 helpful. It's a matter of implementing them 12 specifically for the circumstances of any given 13 14 survey. 15 Other than this particular document 16 that we've marked as PX 76, are there other 17 treatises or articles or books that you consider 18 authoritative with respect to designing surveys? 19 Α. There are others that have some 20 guidance that I would look to at various times. 21 **Q**. What are they? 22 Well, for trademark matters, the Α. 23 McCarthy on Trademark Treatise is certainly considered authoritative or useful on certain 24 25 topics. On occasion I've read law review articles

A728

	Page 41
1	Poret
2	or articles in other publications.
3	But there's nothing that I would single
4	out as an authoritative treatise.
5	Q. Can you name any others that you use
6	other than McCarthy on Trademark and PX 76?
7	A. I wouldn't say that I use. I've seen
8	other works at various times. There's some book
9	by Phyllis Welter that I've seen before.
10	Q. In connection with doing your surveys,
11	do you consult PX 76?
12	A. Only if there's some specific topic
13	that I have reason to think this is going to have
14	some specific guidance on. But in general I would
15	not go to consult it. It's something that is in
16	the background of my knowledge and understanding.
17	But it's not a handbook that I can go to to help
18	me in any specific survey, really.
19	Q. What about McCarthy on Trademark? When
20	you are doing trademark-related surveys, do you
21	consult McCarthy on Trademark?
22	A. Again, not unless I happen to think
23	there's something very specific in there that
24	would be useful.
25	Q. You just follow your own guidelines?

	Page 42
1	Poret
2	MS. DURIE: Objection, argumentative,
3	and it mischaracterizes the witness's
4	testimony.
5	Q. For surveys.
6	A. No. It's just that a lot of these
7	things that you would call authorities or general
8	guidelines are come from many different sources
9	over many years; and they become part of your
10	basic knowledge and experience, and you don't need
11	to consult them on a project-by-project basis as
12	if they are handbooks for how to do something
13	specific.
14	Q. What are the guidelines that you follow
15	in designing surveys?
16	A. I don't know that I can answer such a
17	general question. There are many different
18	Q. There must be some big-picture
19	guidelines that you use when you design surveys;
20	right?
21	A. Yes.
22	Q. Can you tell me what they are?
23	A. I can tell you some of them.
24	Attempting to get through to a relevant universe
25	is certainly one. Attempting to write questions

	Page 43
1	Poret
2	that are clear and understandable and don't bias
3	the results, interpreting data properly and
4	reporting it properly.
5	Those are some of the big ones that
6	come to mind.
7	Q. Anything else?
8	A. There are countless other things that
9	would come to mind as principles if I was working
10	through the issues of a specific survey, but it's
11	hard to just name them all in the abstract.
12	Q. Do you know how many Google has copied
13	in its library project?
14	A. No.
15	Q. Do you have any idea at all?
16	A. No.
17	Q. Do you know whether it's 100,000 or 100
18	million or 10 million?
19	A. I don't know.
20	Q. Is that relevant?
21	A. To the not to
22	Q. To the survey.
23	A. No.
24	Q. Do you know how many authors' books
25	have been copied by Google in the library project?

	Page 44
1	Poret
2	A. No.
3	Q. Do you have any ballpark as to whether
4	it's 100,000 authors, 2 million authors, 880
5	authors?
6	A. No. I assume it's far less than 2
7	million, because I don't think there are that many
8	published authors, but I don't I couldn't give
9	you a specific estimate.
10	Q. Did you ask Google if they knew?
11	A. No.
12	Q. You don't think that's relevant?
13	A. I don't see how that's relevant to what
14	the survey was trying to measure.
15	Q. And the survey was trying to measure
16	what?
17	A. It was trying to determine whether a
18	published author what their attitude was toward
19	the specific issue of having their books scanned
20	so that for the specific purpose of the snippets,
21	these short excerpts being findable and displayed
22	in search results, and that pertains both to
23	somebody whose books have been scanned and are
24	available on Google Books and authors who that has
25	not happened with.

A732

TO THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERT	Page 54
1	Poret
2	but I just don't know if that is part of this
3	program you're describing as opposed to some other
4	program.
5	Q. And do you know whether those sales are
6	by permission of the author or publisher?
7	A. I don't know.
8	Q. Now, on the bottom of the page the
9	last paragraph on page 1, second sentence, you
10	say, The purpose of the survey was to determine
11	the extent to which members of the proposed class
12	object to Google's scanning of books and display
13	of short excerpts in Google Books search results
14	and the extent to which they believe they have
15	been negatively impacted by these actions.
16	Right?
17	A. Yes.
18	Q. So that was the purpose of the survey?
19	A. Yes.
20	Q. So the survey's purpose was not to
21	determine whether authors objected to Google's
22	scanning of books without permission?
23	A. It was. That was the purpose.
24	Q. It was the purpose to determine if
25	authors objected to Google scanning without

A733

	Page 55
1	Poret
2	permission?
3	A. Yes.
4	Q. So why doesn't the survey disclose
5	anywhere within its terms that the scanning was
6	without permission?
7	A. It is intended to do that.
8	Q. Well, where does it do that?
9	A. It lays out two different things that
10	can happen in Google Books. It says that short
11	that short excerpts that Google scans books and
12	provides short excerpts or, with permission,
13	fuller or longer portions are available. And that
14	is that is conveying that one form is with
15	permission and one is without.
16	Q. Let's look at what we've marked as
17	PX 64, which is Appendix B, which is the survey
18	itself; correct?
19	A. Yes.
20	Q. If you go to for some reason these
21	pages are not numbered at the bottom, but at the
22	top it says page 5 of 8. Do you see that?
23	A. Yes.
24	Q. Then there's a question or I guess this
25	is 220, which is when you explained to the

Page 56 1 Poret 2 respondents about Google Books; right? 3 Α. Yes. It says, As you may or may not know, 4 Google scans books so that their content can be 5 searched online and results displayed in Google 7 Books. We'd like to ask your opinion about one particular aspect of Google Books. 8 9 For some books short excerpts of a 10 book, about one-eighth of a page each, are viewable in Google Books search results. A user 11 12 who performs a search can see up to three short 13 excerpts of the book containing the relevant search terms. 14 A user can also click on a link to find 15 16 the book in a bookstore or library. The scanning 17 of books and displaying of short excerpts and search results is what we would like to ask you 18 19 about. 20 Where does it say that this scanning is without permission? 21 Because the next thing it says is for 22 Α. 23 some other books the full book or longer portions 24 are available with special permission from the 25 publisher or author.

	Page 57
1	Poret
2	Q. Well, Mr
3	MS. DURIE: Wait, wait. Let him finish
4	his answer.
5	Q. Go ahead. Finish.
6	A. The flow of this is here's one thing
7	that happens and here's the others thing that
8	happens, and the second thing is saying this is
9	what happens when there is permission.
10	Q. Yeah, let's talk about that. So in the
11	first flow, which is 220, you say for some books
12	short excerpts of the book, about one-eighth of
13	the page, are viewable in Google Books search
14	results.
15	Nowhere do you use the term the
16	<pre>phrase "without permission"; correct?</pre>
17	A. Not in those words that you just read.
18	Q. Well, those are two pretty simple
19	words, "without permission"; right?
20	MS. DURIE: Objection, argumentative.
21	Q. What would have been so hard to say, As
22	you may or may not know, Google scans books
23	without permission so that their content can be
24	searched online and displayed in Google Books?
25	MS. DURIE: Objection, argumentative.

Page 58 1 Poret I never said anything would be hard 2 Α. about saying that. I'm just saying I wrote it in 3 a way that conveys clearly that one version is 4 5 without permission and one is. And I think it's 6 perfectly clear. 7 So you don't think it would have been a little bit more clear if you had added the words 8 "without permission" after "Google scans books"? 9 10 You don't think that would have been slightly more 11 clear? 12 No, I don't think it would have been 13 more clear. I think it's as clear as it can be. 14 Q. Oh, you think it's as clear as it can 15 be? 16 Yes, and partly --Α. 17 MS. DURIE: Wait, wait. If you asked a 18 question, please let the witness answer it. 19 MS. ZACK: The question calls for a 20 "yes" or "no" answer. 21 MS. DURIE: He does not have to answer 22 the question "yes" or "no," and you shouldn't 23 interrupt his answers. 24 The only thing I'm adding that goes Α. 25 into this, you have to realize the question do you

and the second s	Page 59
1	Poret
2	approve of or object to Google doing something in
3	and of itself makes no sense as a question if it's
4	suggesting that it's done with your permission.
5	It makes no sense to somebody to say do you object
6	to something that you have given permission for.
7	It's an illogical question.
8	So even it makes no sense to
9	interpret it that way even if there was no
10	explanation at all. So the explanation that is
11	given here I think is clear without being leading
12	in one direction or the other.
13	Q. Did you have any discussions with
14	anyone about whether you should include the words
15	"without permission" after "Google scans books"?
16	A. Not that I recall.
17	Q. So you just unilaterally decided that
18	those words were unnecessary?
19	MS. DURIE: Objection, argumentative.
20	A. I decided that they were I have the
21	words "with permission" here
22	Q. What
23	MS. DURIE: Wait, wait. Let him finish
24	answering.
25	Go ahead.

Page 60 1 Poret 2 The answer is I put -- I put "with Α. 3 permission" in as I thought would be the best way 4 to be clear and yet not overly leading. 5 Oh, so you think if you added the term Q. "without permission" that would be leading? 6 7 Α. I didn't say --8 I'm trying to understand what you're Q. 9 Are you saying that if the words "without saying. 10 permission" were added it would become leading? Not necessarily, but it could be. 11 Α. 12 All right. Let's get to the next Q. 13 sentence, which you say makes it all fine. You say, For some other books the full book or longer 14 15 portions of the book are viewable in response to 16 search Google Books with special permission from 17 the publisher or author. Our questions are not 18 about the display of full books or longer 19 portions. 20 Why did you use the word "special"? 21 Well, just to highlight that we're Α. 22 talking about an instance where Google has 23 affirmatively gone to the author or the publisher 24 and gotten permission. 25 Q. What was special about it?

	Page 61
1	Poret
2	A. Well, in other words, that it's a
3	specific effort to have gotten permission for that
4	specific book.
5	Q. Why didn't you just say "with
6	permission"?
7	A. I think that would have been fine too.
8	Q. Yeah, well, don't you think the
9	juxtaposition of these two paragraphs actually,
10	contrary to your view, conveys the impression that
11	the original scanning is with permission and that
12	the secondary, for other books, is with special
13	permission?
14	A. No.
15	Q. You don't think so?
16	A. No. I think that's completely
17	illogical.
18	Q. You don't think that that is a
19	reading a possible reading for somebody who's
20	over 80-years-old?
21	A. I don't. I don't think that hearing
22	that and then hearing a question as it was worded,
23	I don't think it's possible that somebody
24	interpreted a question to be asking do you approve
25	of something or do you object to something that

	Page 65
1	Poret
2	receiving statutory damages for Google's scanning
3	of books without permission of the author or
4	publisher?
5	A. No.
6	Q. Is there a particular reason you didn't
7	ask that question?
8	A. It never would have occurred to me to
9	ask something like that.
10	Q. Because you didn't want to know the
11	answer; right?
12	MS. DURIE: Objection, argumentative.
13	A. No.
14	Q. Well, if you want to know about whether
15	people want to participate in a lawsuit, don't you
16	have to talk to them about the remedies that they
17	might get if they won?
18	A. I don't know. That's not quite how I
19	conceive of the survey.
20	Q. Okay. So this survey is not intended
21	to determine whether or not authors want to
22	participate in this lawsuit, is it?
23	A. I don't know that I'd put it exactly
24	that way. I'd say it's more whether one of the
25	purposes would be whether the lawsuit is

Page 66 1 Poret 2 consistent with the interests or desires of a significant portion of authors who might be in the 3 4 class. I don't know whether you'd call that whether they want to participate or not. 5 6 But you would agree that the way the Q. 7 questions are worded here does not really -- is not a fair determination of whether any of these 8 authors want to participate in this lawsuit; 9 10 right? I do -- I do think it's fair. 11 I think 12 the fair way to find out is asking their opinion 13 on the substantive topic, not saying to them, hey, If we pay you enough money, would you, you know, 14 15 change your mind about this. That's what a survey 16 is not supposed to do. Oh, so you think it's fair to leave out 17 18 the fact that Google's scanning books without 19 permission and that they have a right to damages 20 for that --21 MS. DURIE: Object. 22 Q. -- and that that somehow would give you 23 some insight into whether they would want to 24 participate in a lawsuit? 25 MS. DURIE: Objection, argumentative,

Page 67 1 Poret 2 lacks foundation, mischaracterizes the 3 witness's testimony. 4 Α. That's not what the survey did. 5 In the survey from point 220 and the Q. 6 next couple of pages, the phrase "short excerpts" 7 is repeated about eight times. Was that 8 intentional on your part? 9 I don't know that eight was 10 intentional, but it was intentional to try to make 11 sure that they understand the distinction between 12 the two categories that we're talking about and 13 that they're answering about the right one. 14 Q. Do you think that someone who has never 15 been on Google would understand from this prose 16 what this all means? 17 I don't know how to answer that across the board, but I know that I looked at the results 18 19 of the survey and they were consistent among 20 people who said they were very familiar with Google Books versus those who aren't. So I don't 21 22 think that was a factor in the results. 23 How many people did you attempt to 24 reach in the survey? How many phone calls were 25 made?

Page 93

Poret

A. I don't know, but the whole intent of that previous description that we gave people was that we're not talking about an extended section of a book, that we're talking about the several-sentence, eighth-of-a-page snippets surrounding a search term.

So the intent is by this point, having heard our description a couple of times, we have defined for them what the short excerpt means and that they should now understand that.

- Q. Do you know if anybody asked them -- is there some reason why you didn't say something specific like Google has a program called the partner program. Books are available by permission for preview of up to 10 percent or 20 percent of the book. These are not the type of short excerpts that we're talking about in this survey.
- A. That is what I feel we did in the previous section, just not the way you stated it.
 - Q. Not as clear?
 - A. No, not -- no, I don't agree with that.
- Q. It says, followed by we'd like to know the extent to which you approve of or object to

Page 94

Poret

Google scanning your copyrighted books so that they can be searched online and short excerpts delayed in search results.

What's the use -- why are you asking them about the "so that"?

- A. Because that is what the -- that's what the survey is about. It's Google making short excerpts of their books available in search results.
- Q. You don't think this conveys an impression that that's the reason why Google scans the books?
- A. Well, that -- yes, I do think it partly conveys that that's the reason. That's what we're asking about. Assuming somebody is not giving permission, the question is do they approve of Google doing this so that they're -- so that these results can be displayed like this, that that is -- that is a purpose of what Google's doing, and it's the purpose that's relevant to the survey.
- Q. So am I to glean from your last answer that you were trying to determine whether or not people, respondents, objected or not to Google

Page 95
Poret
scanning without permission?
A. Yes, for the specific purpose of
showing these excerpts, short excerpts.
Q. Right. So you want to know whether or
not the respondents object, but you don't include
the words "without permission"
A. Yes.
Q here, just like you didn't include
it in the description?
A. We've already talked about how I feel
it was included in the description. But yes, I
agree it's not repeated in this question.
Q. Now, there's no choice here of no
opinion or not enough information. Is there some
reason why those are not choices?
A. Well, neither approve nor object is
Q. That could mean they're neutral. That
doesn't necessarily mean they have no opinion,
does it?
A. Well, if someone has no opinion, then
they neither approve nor object.
Q. So you believe that the phrase "neither
approve nor object" is exactly the same as an
option of no opinion?

	Page 96
1	Poret
2	A. I believe it encompasses it.
3	Q. You do?
4	A. Yes.
5	Q. And what about the option of I don't
6	have enough information to answer, or need more
7	information?
8	A. If some well, that I never I
9	never heard that anybody gave an answer like that.
10	And if that was that's the type of thing that
11	if people were giving a response like that, I
12	would have been told and asked about that. So I
13	don't think that was an issue.
14	Q. That wasn't an option given to them;
15	correct?
16	A. That wasn't an option on the scale, but
17	people can obviously say what they want on the
18	phone, at least. And when people say things like
19	that in the initial phase of a survey, that comes
20	back to me when we talk about it. And we
21	sometimes make little tweaks.
22	But I never heard anything about
23	anybody giving a response like that.
24	Q. And you didn't think that it was
25	appropriate to have that as one of the options?

Page 97 1 Poret 2 I'm not saying it's inappropriate; I'm Α. saying the way I did it I think is appropriate. 3 4 Now, you've mentioned this survey was Q. limited to the snippets. You're aware that Google 5 scanned entire books and gave copies of the entire 7 scans to libraries; right? 8 Α. Yes. Were you specifically instructed not to 9 Ο. 10 ask any questions about that? 11 Α. No. 12 Q. You just didn't? Nobody said to me don't ask questions 13 Α. about that, but that was not a subject that was 14 15 brought up as a purpose of the research. 16 0. On the top of page 9 it says, The order in which "object" came before "approved" was 17 18 randomized in both the question text and in the 19 order of the response option, so that half of 20 respondents were always presented with "approved" 21 first and half presented with "object" first. 22 That's done by the computer. 23 though you have a lot of nonrespondents, you can 24 make sure that half and half of the actual 25 respondents had this different order?

	Page 98
1	Poret
2	A. Yes.
3	Q. How do you do that?
4	A. Well, there's two ways it can be done
5	technologically. It can either be that every time
6	you get to this question it literally picks a
7	random number that determines this, or it can be
8	that every other respondent gets a different a
9	different order. I'm pretty sure it was the
10	former option, technologically that it simply
L1	randomized.
12	Q. It randomized only for those actually
13	responding?
14	A. Yes, because it's literally happening
15	as you're getting to that point of the
16	questionnaire.
17	Q. I see.
18	Now, going back to on page 9 there's
19	this question: Which of the following best
20	represents your opinion how, if at all, you have
21	been financially impacted by Google scanning your
22	copyrighted books so that they can be searched
23	online and short excerpts displayed in search
24	results?
25	And there's three choices: I feel I

Page 99 1 Poret 2 have financially benefited, I feel I have been financially harmed, I feel I have not been 3 4 financially impacted one way or the other. 5 Again, why is there no choice of I don't have current information to answer this 6 7 question? It's the same answer before. 8 Α. 9 Q. Well, meaning what? 10 The person either has a perception that Α. 11 they've been harmed or that they've benefited or 12 they don't. They don't -- they don't need 13 information to answer that question. 14 Q. So this is only designed to elicit 15 perceptions, not actual facts; right? 16 Well, I don't think the line between 17 perception and fact is that is all that clear. 18 It's certainly intended to get at facts, but of 19 course you necessarily are dealing with somebody's 20 perception of what the facts are. 21 You could have designed a survey to Q. 22 say, I have been financially benefited; and then 23 the next question would be why; and then they 24 would give a verbal response; right? 25 Α. Well, that is -- that is how it -- that

Page 100

Poret

2 is what happens in this survey.

- Q. The question was I feel I have been.

 You didn't ask whether they had been; you asked whether I feel I have financially benefited. It's a different question than I have financially benefited; correct?
- A. It's different wording. But what I was saying is that the other piece of what you said does happen, which is if they give one of these answers they are asked about that.
- Q. Right. But is there a particular reason why you included the "feel" part of the question?
- A. Yes, because I don't expect that somebody on the phone is going to -- is going to know for sure how this has affected them. In other words, I don't know that an author always would have the ability to quantify somehow whether this has financially benefited them or not.

So it is phrasing it in a way that is intended to convey we want to know your opinion about this. You don't have to necessarily have plotted this out with an accountant and figured it out.

	Page 101
1	Poret
2	But that doesn't mean we're not
3	interested in fact. We're interested in their
4	perception of what the facts are.
5	Q. Let's go back to page 7, going back to
6	this description that you read to all the
7	respondents or that they read themselves online if
8	they responded to the e-mail version. There's a
9	sentence that says, A user can also click on a
10	link to find a book in a bookstore or library.
11	Is there a particular reason you put
12	that in there, that text?
13	A. Yes.
14	Q. What was the reason?
15	A. That that is an accurate description of
16	what happens that I think would be relevant to
17	some people's opinions.
18	Q. Have you ever clicked on any of those
19	links?
20	A. I did, in some of my searches, see that
21	there were in fact links to buy books. I can't
22	remember if I clicked on any of those links.
23	Q. Well, if you click on a link for some
24	of the books and you didn't click on any of
25	them, so you don't know what happens when you

Page 102
Poret
click?
A. I don't remember if I clicked on links
for buying books.
Q. Did you get any information from Google
about whether or not they know whether or not
those clicks result in any sales of books?
A. I do not have any information about
that.
Q. One way or the other?
A. Right.
Q. Did you ask them that question?
A. No.
Q. So in all of these questions you're
always asking about feelings, which for the reason
you've already testified? Is that the reason?
A. Again, that's I wouldn't quite put
it that we're asking about feelings. I'd put it
that we're asking about attitudes in one instance
and perceptions of impact on them in the other.
Q. Every question has the word "feel";
right?
A. Not every question. The questions that
we are talking about.
Q. These questions about financial impact

	Page 103
1	Poret
2	and demand, et cetera, they all ask about "feel,"
3	feelings; correct?
4	A. No. They have the word "feel" in it.
5	Q. You don't think that means it's a
6	question about how you feel?
7	A. I think the word "feel" is intended to
8	convey we're not asking for quantitative backup of
9	this; we're asking for your opinion.
10	Q. For a seat-of-the-pants answer when
11	they get called up by somebody randomly at, you
12	know, 8 o'clock at night?
13	MS. DURIE: Objection.
14	Q. Is that what it's intended to get?
15	A. No, it's just like saying I think I
16	think I've benefited or I feel I've benefited or
17	it's conveying that we're asking for an opinion,
18	not something quantitative.
19	Q. Okay. So now go to page 12. We have
20	these questions about do they feel they were
21	financially impacted, do they feel they were
22	financially benefited, et cetera, do they feel
23	demand has improved or not; right? That's the way
24	they're all phrased; right?
25	A. You just said a bunch of things. I

	Page 111
1	Poret
2	typical response rates for a population like this.
3	Q. "Like this" meaning what?
4	A. Meaning not just an ordinary consumer
5	but I don't know if you would say more
6	sophisticated or professional, but a typically
7	higher educated, more sophisticated the other
8	thing is that 3 percent number that you came up
9	with is just an arbitrary number because, until we
10	find out, it might be that a thousand of the
11	e-mail addresses were just invalid addresses.
12	It's not as if that means that
13	everybody who didn't respond looked at this and
14	chose not to responsible. It could be that most
15	of them never even saw it.
16	Q. Right. But let's just back up and talk
17	about your sample to begin with was just this Gale
18	database; right?
19	A. Yes.
20	Q. And that's not that was just
21	given you were told to use that by Google;
22	right?
23	MS. DURIE: Objection, asked and
24	answered, mischaracterizes.
25	Q. By Google's counsel?

	Page 112
1	Poret
2	MS. DURIE: Mischaracterizes the
3	witness's testimony.
4	Q. That's what happened; right?
5	A. No, I wouldn't put it that way.
6	Q. They provided it to you?
7	A. Yes.
8	Q. Did you make any determination about
9	whether that was an over-inclusive or under-
10	inclusive list with respect to your target
11	population?
12	A. Yes, I thought about that. My sense is
13	it might have been over inclusive in that it might
14	contain authors who don't end up meeting a class
15	definition. But that is not a problem because we
16	can just find out from them if they meet the class
17	definition. And then if they don't, those people
18	could always be put aside in the analysis.
19	And could it be under inclusive? By
20	some degree it could be. You can never have a
21	list that actually has managed to get everybody in
22	an industry. So I'm sure that there are some
23	authors that Gale didn't manage to get on the list
24	for one reason or another.
25	But my understanding is it's a fairly

Poret

1

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

- comprehensive list. If it was missing some
 authors, it wouldn't be enough to undermine its
 validity for use in a study like this.
 - Q. So you said it might be over inclusive because it includes authors that aren't in the class; right?
 - A. Yes.
 - Q. And then you said but you could adjust for that by determining who was in the class and figuring out, as to those, what their responses were; right?
 - A. What I meant was if you wanted to you could just take anybody who, based on their answers, does not appear to be in the class and put them aside and just look at the data of the people who are in the class.
 - Q. And how could you determine by your survey who was and who wasn't in the class?
 - A. One thing you could do is determine which people said yes to -- yes, that there was a copyright registration filed within three months versus the people who said no. So those are some people -- that would identify some people who were not members of the class.

Page 117 1 Poret 2 information about these 550 that you just mentioned who said their copyright was filed; 3 4 right? The reason is that I looked at it and 5 Α. the results are so similar to the overall group 7 that it didn't seem -- it didn't strike me as putting in a section about that. 9 You've put in other tables where you 10 said the results were consistent? Right. 11 Α. 12 Referring you to page 19 of your Q. 13 report. I'm sorry, I lost my train of thought. Before you do that, you said the report -- I mean 14 your sample could have been under inclusive; 15 16 right? We talked about over inclusive. You said 17 it also could have been under inclusive. 18 I mean, it was by definition under 19 inclusive, wasn't it? This Gale list could not 20 possibly be a list of all the authors whose books 21 have been copied in Google Books, could it? 22 Α. I don't know. Every single list that 23 any survey has ever been done from could be called 24 under inclusive, depending on how you look at it. 25 The question is Gale maintains a reference work

A758

Page 118 1 Poret that is designed to have as many authors on it as 2 they -- as they can manage to keep track of. 3 I'm saying I'm sure it couldn't 4 5 possibly be a hundred percent of authors at all times, but as a reputable company that maintains 6 7 databases like that I think if it's under inclusive it's not by a concerning amount. 8 9 Nobody is faulting Gale for their 0. 10 database. What I'm asking you about is as the creator of a survey you -- one of the issues that 11 12 you have to consider is whether the sample was 13 under inclusive or not; right? 14 Α. Yes. 15 Because a sample is not necessarily a Q. 16 fair sample if it's grossly under inclusive; 17 right? 18 Α. That may or may not be true. 19 0. It may or may not be true. 20 So you could have a sample that was --21 did you do any kind of testing of this sample to 22 determine that it is representative of all authors 23 in the United States, of the Gale data? 24 The only people who were called were Α. 25 from this database, so I have no way to compare

Page 119 1 Poret 2 that to anybody who isn't in the database. But my 3 understanding is that this database is a reliable 4 source, that if it's under inclusive it's not --5 it's not by much. It's not going to be missing 6 enough of a universe to undermine the results. 7 Q. Where did you get that information, 8 that it was -- that it's not grossly under 9 inclusive? 10 Α. Well, in look -- in digging around, that seemed to be the best -- the best available 11 source, and the number of authors it has on it is 12 13 really large. 14 And based on everything that we 15 discussed at the time, I don't have any reason to 16 believe that there's 2 million authors in the U.S. 17 with published books, and yet this only has 18 142,000. I don't know what the numbers are 19 exactly. But I think this is -- it's a sizeable 20 list. 21 Well, it may be that there is no list Q. 22 that has every author on it. But to say that it's 23 the best list you could find does not mean that it 24 isn't grossly under inclusive, does it? 25 No, that in and of itself doesn't mean Α.

Page 120 1 Poret 2 that. But that it has something approaching 3 150,000 authors seems pretty robust. 4 142,000 authors, you said, but you only Q. 5 had contact information for about a third; right? That may be about right, but we looked 6 Α. for contact information for others. 7 8 And you can't tell me, then, what the Q. 9 total number you found contact information was; 10 right? 11 No, I can. The report discusses that 12 we had a sub sample to deal with this very issue 13 of people who were on the list but had no contact 14 information. And we found contact information for 15 a lot of other people on the list so that we could 16 get through to a sample of people who had no contact information and confirm that the results 17 18 among them were basically consistent with the 19 results among everybody else. 20 Q. Yeah, you have 119 people that you said 21 you had no contact information for from Gale that 22 you somehow got contact information for, and they 23 responded to the survey; correct? 24 Α. Yes. 25 Q. But you don't tell me how -- you don't

	Page 121
1	Poret
2	say how many others without contact information
3	you got contact information for and they didn't
4	respond?
5	A. Well, this is the issue we've already
6	talked about. It has nothing to do with whether
7	they had contact information or not.
8	Q. Right. So one of the issues is of the
9	142,000, which is already grossly under inclusive,
10	how many did you ultimately get contact
11	information for. And we don't know the answer to
12	that question as we sit here; right?
13	A. Right.
14	Q. So it could have been do you have
15	any idea of what possible number it was?
16	MS. DURIE: Calls for speculation.
17	A. I said I'd find out for you.
18	Q. So then from an already grossly under-
19	inclusive starting point of 142,000, we're down to
20	a yet more grossly under inclusive of probably
21	less than 50,000 people that were contacted;
22	right?
23	MS. DURIE: Objection. It's
24	argumentative, it lacks foundation, and it
25	mischaracterizes the witness's testimony.

Poret

- A. First of all, I never agreed that 142,000 is grossly under inclusive. And what you're talking about now I also don't think is so much an issue of under inclusiveness.
- Q. When you did your analysis of the data, did you notice that there weren't too many young authors?
 - A. Yes.

- Q. You don't think that affects the results?
- A. Well, I did -- I did look at the results by age, and my assessment of that is that the results were very similar across all the age groups, at least through the forties, fifties, sixties, seventies. Below that I don't feel like I had enough respondents to really look at those individually.

But my sense is that from looking at the data across ages that the results were fairly consistent and that even if you wanted to re-weight the numbers to reflect a different age distribution that the numbers weren't going to change by more than a percentage point or two here and there.

1 Poret

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

- Q. I'm trying to find the results by age -- oh, here it is, page 19. You say -- you have your chart at the top, and then you say, While the set of authors surveyed more heavily represents older authors, the survey results were reasonably consistent among authors of various ages.
- 9 What do you mean by "reasonably 10 consistent"?
- 11 A. Within a couple of percentage points,
 12 nothing that would result in a different
 13 conclusion.
 - Q. So then you have your chart which has authors divided up by under 60, 112; 60 to 69, 166; 70 and older, 537.

So that doesn't seem to be -- what happened to the 50 to 59, 40 to 49, 30 to 39 categories? You didn't think you should set those out?

A. Obviously we're getting to a smaller sample size at that point, so I figured grouping those together into under 60 made sense. But you could break it out into 50 to 59, and you could look at 40 to 49; and I did. And the results

	Page 124
1	Poret
2	among those groups are similar.
3	Q. So do you know how many respondents
4	were age 20 to 29?
5	A. None.
6	Q. How many 30 to 39?
7	A. Yeah, I think there were four.
8	Q. Right. And how many 40 to 49?
9	A. I think it was something between 25 and
10	30.
11	Q. Yeah, 25, does that sound right?
12	A. I said 25 to 30 so
13	Q. And 50 to 59, do you know how many?
14	A. I'd say, you know, 80 to 90.
15	Q. I counted 80, but that could be off.
16	You didn't really have a heck of a lot
17	of younger respondents?
18	A. I agree with that.
19	Q. And yet people in their twenties,
20	thirties, forties, do write books; right?
21	A. Yes.
22	Q. In fact, they're the ones that are
23	probably writing books that are in print; right?
24	A. Well, that that did occur to me, and
25	that does seem to make sense. And that's part of

Poret

the reason that I looked at the results between people who have books in print and people whose books are not in print and saw that whether books are in print or not really wasn't making much of a difference in the results. So I don't think that that would be a basis for young people to have different responses.

The other thing that was at work in my consideration as this was going on was that my understanding is the class representatives were in their seventies or older, and they're purporting to represent the interests of a class.

So it doesn't seem inappropriate that the survey respondents tended to be toward the age range of the class representatives. And if somebody thinks that 20-year-olds -- people in their twenties and thirties are just categorically different interests than people in their sixties and seventies, then that's --

- Q. I'm not asking what people think; I'm asking whether you think the survey was under inclusive or not.
- A. That's what I'm telling you, though.

 The only reason somebody would worry about a

Page 126 1 Poret 2 survey being under inclusive is if you were 3 thinking, all right, we're missing a group of people that might be categorically different. They might have different issues. They might have 5 6 different interests. 7 And if you believe that, you know, by definition this class -- those people couldn't be 8 9 part of this class anyway. So that's why it does 10 not seem to me to be an issue of under 11 inclusiveness. 12 Q. So your role here is as the designer of 13 a survey; right? 14 Α. Yes. 15 Ο. You seem to be sort of crossing over 16 into opining about what's appropriate in a class 17 action setting. 18 No, I'm just -- I'm just saying that by Α.

A. No, I'm just -- I'm just saying that by definition when you raise an issue of should we, in a survey, be overly concerned that we're missing a group of people, the only reason you would be concerned is if you're thinking that group of people might be essentially a different class of people than the ones we reached, who have different answers and different interests.

19

20

21

22

23

24

Page 127 1 Poret And that does not strike me as 2 3 problematic in and of itself when the whole basis of -- or a big part of the basis of what we're 4 5 testing is do the people -- do authors have interests that are consistent across this class 6 7 with the class leaders. 8 You had 32 respondents who were over Q. 9 90; right? You're aware of that? I'm actually not sure at the top, but 10 Α. 11 I'll take your word for it. 12 Well, approximately 32. You don't Q. 13 think they might be a little less familiar with 14 the Internet than people in their twenties, thirties, and forties? 15 16 Α. No, they very well might be. 17 Q. Is that of any relevance? First of all, 32 people are not going 18 Α. 19 to affect the results one way or the other, but 20 across the survey and across the different ages 21 the survey should be accounting for different 22 levels of familiarity that different people have. 23 Q. That assumes that it was properly 24 constructed in the first place; right? 25 I don't know. Α.

Poret

- Q. The survey can only be extrapolated if it was properly designed; right? It's not ipso facto that just because you do a survey you can say that the results can be extrapolated from one population to another; right?
- A. It's hard to tell what you're asking.

 I basically agree with the idea that a survey should be properly designed for -- to make use of the results.
- Q. An do you know what use of the results Google is making of your survey?
- A. Not -- I know that this report has been submitted. I don't know how to characterize what attorneys or Google are doing with it.
- Q. Well, all the percentages in your report are based on all the authors sampled, whether or not they're books were actually scanned and Googled in Google's library project; right?
- A. I think there are tables in the report that break down people who -- that talk about people who said that their books are available on Google Books in short excerpts and those who didn't or weren't sure. That issue is to some extent addressed.

	Page 129
1	Poret
2	Q. But you never got a list from Google of
3	the books that they actually scanned so that you
4	could be sure that those particular books were the
5	ones that were the subject of your survey?
6	A. I didn't get any kind of list from
7	Google.
8	Q. On page 16 of your report, Footnote
9	5
10	A. Okay.
11	Q it says, Out of the total 880
12	respondents, 1 indicated that they or someone in
13	their household works for Google, 16 indicated
14	they or someone in their household works for the
15	U.S. government, and 5 indicated that they or
16	someone in their household works for either a
17	local, state, or federal court. Removing these
18	respondents would not change the survey findings.
19	Right, you say that?
20	A. Yes.
21	Q. I can do simple math, and I added these
22	up. You're talking about 22 respondents; right?
23	A. Yes.
24	Q. 22 out of 880 you're saying is not
25	statistically significant? Is that what you're

Page 145 1 Poret 2 which is the point of a pilot or pretest. 3 But I did not see anything that seemed problematic that was going to require any changes, 4 5 so I sort of just rolled on. But I would consider the first phase of it essentially a pilot. 6 7 Q. So when you say "the first phase," the first how many surveys? 8 I don't -- I don't remember. I think 9 that we could tell that from -- I know that they 10 11 e-mailed me a data file, so -- which I'm sure from 12 that I could tell what sample size I first was 13 looking at. 14 So you looked at the first whatever Q. 15 number of it was surveys, and you didn't make any 16 changes; right? 17 Α. Right. 18 Are there any such things as generally 19 accepted survey principles? 20 Α. Yes. 21 Where can one find them? 0. 22 Α. I don't think one can find them in any 23 I think, like a lot of one place written down. 24 fields, there's -- general principles come from a 25 lot of different sources and from a lot of

Page 146 1 Poret 2 experience. 3 So there's nowhere written down 0. 4 anywhere a list of generally accepted survey principles? 5 There are plenty of places that have 6 7 things, like the reference guide, that have some general principles. But there's no single place 8 9 that I would point to. And I wouldn't even say 10 that these general -- I wouldn't say that any particular source is the authoritative guide on 11 12 anything. 13 Q. But yet there are generally accepted survey principles? 14 15 Yes, I think that's fair to say. Α. 16 Q. And have you ever criticized someone 17 else's survey? 18 Α. 19 And when you criticize someone else's 20 survey, it's because you believe they haven't 21 followed certain survey principles, sometimes? I don't know that I think about it in 22 Α. 23 the abstract like that. I look at their survey 24 and review it. And if I think there are serious 25 flaws in it, I would point them out.

Page 147 1 Poret What type of flaws have you found in 2 0. 3 other people's surveys? Α. That there were flaws in the universe, 4 that the questions were poorly done for one reason 5 or the other, that data was analyzed incorrectly. 6 7 Those are the examples that come to mind. So "flaws in the universe," you mean 8 Ο. 9 flaws in the universe that was sampled? What do 10 you mean by "flaws in the universe"? 11 Α. That the people who were interviewed 12 were not really the right people. 13 You ever criticized a survey for being Q. over or under inclusive? 14 15 I've certainly criticized a survey for Α. 16 being over inclusive. I'm not sure I have for 17 being under inclusive. Is that because you think over 18 19 inclusiveness is more problematic? 20 Not necessarily, but in those -- in the Α. 21 instances where I've done that, there's been the 22 possibility that the majority of the people in the 23 survey didn't actually belong in the survey; and 24 those people who didn't belong, that there's

A773

reason to think that they were not even

	Page 148
1	Poret
2	appropriate test subjects and their answers could
3	be could make no sense for that survey.
4	Q. When you've criticized a survey for
5	having questions that were poorly done, in what
6	ways from a survey's surveyor's perspective
7	would a question be poorly done?
8	A. It's almost impossible to answer
9	questions like this in the abstract. Questions
10	could be worded in a way that they're misleading
11	or that they're not understood. They could be
12	leading and suggestive. They could be irrelevant.
13	Q. Anything else?
14	A. I think that covers it.
15	Q. In cases where you found other
16	surveyors to have data analyzed data
17	incorrectly, what type of mistakes do people make?
18	A. Typically that answers are being
19	classified to mean one thing when they don't
20	really mean that.
21	Q. Anything else?
22	A. That's all I can think of.
23	Q. Are there any such thing as generally
24	accepted statistical methods for surveyors?
25	A. Yes.

	Page 149
1	Poret
2	Q. Can you find them somewhere in writing?
3	A. You could find textbooks and you could
4	find articles, but there's no source that I would
5	point you to.
6	Q. Well, when you criticize have you
7	ever criticized another surveyor because of their
8	statistical methods?
9	A. I don't think so.
10	Q. Do you still have PX 76?
11	A. Yes.
12	Q. On the numbered page 262?
13	A. Okay.
14	Q. About the middle of the page there. It
15	says, The report submitted by a survey expert who
16	conducts a telephone survey shall specify, one,
17	the procedures that were used to identify
18	potential respondents; two, the number of
19	telephone numbers for which no contact was made;
20	and three, the number of contacted potential
21	respondents who refused to participate in the
22	survey.
23	Do you agree or disagree with that?
24	A. I don't agree that that is an automatic
25	rule.

	Page 150
1	Poret
2	Q. So that's not part of generally
3	accepted survey principles, in your view?
4	A. No.
5	Q. Do you sometimes include that
6	information in your report?
7	A. I don't think I ever have.
8	Q. You never have?
9	A. I don't believe so.
10	Q. Have you seen other people who do
11	include it?
12	A. I've seen it included. I've seen far
13	more that do not include it, though.
14	Q. Referring you to page 245?
15	A. Okay.
16	Q. The second paragraph says, One
17	suggested formula for quantifying a tolerable
18	level of nonresponse in a probability sample is
19	based on the guidelines for statistical surveys
20	issued by the former U.S. Office of Statistical
21	Standards.
22	Have you seen those guidelines?
23	A. No.
24	Q. You've never seen them?
25	A. No.

	Page 151
1	Poret
2	Q. You've read PX 76 before; right?
3	A. Yes.
4	Q. And you've seen that this exists;
5	right?
6	A. Well, first of all, nobody thinks that
7	any of this makes any sense, including
8	Dr. Diamond, and she's rewriting all of this.
9	Q. My question is have you seen the U.S.
10	Office of Statistical Standards, and my question
11	is you've seen that it existed right? these
12	guidelines.
13	A. I've read this document. I have not
14	Q. You never looked at them to see what
15	they said?
16	A. I have not, for the reason that I just
17	said to you, which is this is way out of touch
18	with the reality of the market research industry.
19	And Dr. Diamond does not stand behind any of this.
20	Q. You're talking about the rest of the
21	paragraph. I'm talking about the fact that
22	there's some guidelines for statistical surveys
23	issued by the former U.S. Office of Statistical
24	Standards. It's a document that exists; right?
25	A. It may exist, but this whole section is

Page 152 1 Poret reporting numbers from that document, which is why 2 3 I haven't looked at the document, because she's explicitly discussing the numbers that are in that 4 5 document. 6 0. Do you know if that document has other 7 information in it? 8 : I'd imagine it does. Α. But you never thought to look at it? 9 Ο. 10 Α. No. 11 The next portion of this paragraph Q. 12 says, According to these guidelines, response 13 rates of 90 percent or more reliable, et cetera, and then it goes down. It says, If the response 14 15 rate drops below 50 percent, the survey should be 16 regarded with significant caution as a basis for 17 precise quantitative statements about the 18 population from which the sample was drawn. 19 You don't agree with that, I take it? 20 Well, I don't -- I don't agree with the Α. 21 number 50 percent. And I know she's rewriting 22 this section, because no survey would ever come 23 close to that anymore. 24 I do agree with the issue of caution 25 about precise quantitative statements.

Poret

when -- in a survey like this, it's -- to me whether 14 percent is the exact number or it's really 16 percent or 12 percent is not -- is not as important.

In other words, to me whether something's 14 percent as a precise quantitative statement is not so much the point. The point is more -- it is obviously relevant, but the grander conclusion is that there's a dramatic pattern of people favoring -- saying they approve of something as opposed to objecting to it. A response -- a low response rate does not call that into question at all.

- Q. You don't like her numbers here, but there's no number that you would substitute and agree with, like if the response rate drops below X percent the survey should be regarded with significant caution?
- A. I don't know what number I would put on that, but I would tell you that no survey getting a 20 percent rate is miraculous with a survey these days. The standards for response rates have changed dramatically with the way the world has changed.

Poret

And I know that -- well, at least from what I've been told, the next version of this reference guide is dramatically changing this section to reflect what the standards are in the industry.

- 7 Is that because nobody responds to Q. surveys?
 - It's not because nobody responds; it's because there are heightened security and privacy concerns, and it's not like it used to be where people could walk up -- go door to door doing surveys. It's harder and harder to reach people.
 - So because it's harder and harder to Q. reach people, somehow the standards for reliability drop?
 - Yes. The only -- the standards -- the only standards one can have are what is standard in your field. And standard response rates are in the 10 to 20 percent range now. And something that's going to be used as evidence can't be expected to do anything but comply with accepted standards within its field.
 - Assuming the courts accept standards that are lowered; correct?

1

2

3

4

5

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

Page 155 1 Poret 2 That calls for speculation MS. DURIE: 3 and legal conclusion. 4 Α. I don't think that's right. I think 5 it's fairly clear that the rules for courts are 6 that some -- that scientific evidence has to 7 satisfy the standards that are accepted within the 8 relevant field. And these surveys are accepted within the field of market research. 10 And companies are spending billions and 11 billions of dollars on surveys with response rates 12 below 20 percent and 10 percent to make decisions 13 of tremendous consequence for them. And that 14 would not be happening if it wasn't well accepted 15 that surveys with lower response rates are 16 reliable. 17 People wouldn't be spending money on 18 advertising irrationally? Is that your testimony? 19 No, I didn't say advertising; I said on 20 market research. Companies wouldn't be spending 21 billions of dollars to get information that they 22 consider obtained through an unreliable method. 23 MS. DURIE: Joanne, I should either 24 move my flight --25 MS. ZACK: I told Joe that I was going